Masters thesis submitted by:

CHARLTON LESLIE ZIERVOGEL
ZRVCHA002

UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN
SOCIOLOGY DEPARTMENT

SUPERVISOR: PROFESSOR OWEN CRANKSHAW

INTERGENERATIONAL OCCUPATIONAL MOBILITY AMONG BLACKS IN THE MITCHELL'S PLAIN MAGISTERIAL DISTRICT, CAPE TOWN:

Evidence from the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain Survey

SUBMITTED FOR THE COMPLETION OF A MASTERS DEGREE IN SOCIOLOGY

Date of submission: 14 February 2006

Word of Thanks

I would like to take this opportunity to thank all those people who contributed to me completing this Master's thesis, which has been a long and very interesting journey. Firstly to my supervisor, Professor Owen Crankshaw, thank you for the countless hours of guidance and tutelage. I can truly say without a doubt that this would not have been possible without you. Thank you for believing in me and helping me see the light at the end of what I believed to be an endless tunnel. To Wilma, for standing by me through the highs and lows of an arduous journey of self-discovery and academic learning. You have really been an inspiration and your belief in my abilities when I myself had none has helped me complete a task that one-year ago seemed impossible. Looks like all the chicken and chips meals really did the trick. To my family, thank you for just putting up with me and allowing me to further my studies. Yes I have taken longer than normal but I hope that in the end this will be worth my struggle and your patience. To my friends, thank you for that continuous pushing and prodding and making me believe that it was the right thing to do.

I would also like to thank the Yvonne Parfitt Bursaries trust for supporting me through a tricky undergraduate experience and giving me the continued financial support for my honours degree. A special word of thanks goes to the National Research Foundation, for their financial contribution to the completion of my Masters Degree. Your support has enabled me to further my academic studies to levels that would not have been possible on my own.

Think outside the box.....What box?

List of Tables Pg.

List of Figures Pg.

Abstract

This paper has examined intergenerational occupational class mobility amongst Blacks in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District in Cape Town South Africa. In attempting to examine this phenomenon, data collected in the advanced industrial countries of the north are used as a source for comparison and a means by which to identify various methods of analysis. Survey data collected in Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District serves as the main data source for the analysis. The Erikson and Goldthorpe occupational class schema has been used as this has been proven to be effective in examining occupational classes within the South African context. This schema also allows for flexibility of comparison between a host of international studies. Generational data collected from respondents to the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain (KMP) survey are used and reveals some unique characteristics for the area concerned within the realm of intergenerational occupational class mobility. In particular it is shown that middle class occupational origins do not guarantee the transmission of advantage from parents to children's generations. It also becomes clear that a high unemployment rate and the working class nature of the area in question contribute to the growth of unskilled manual labour in the form of informal sector activity. It is revealed that there is a churning effect at work with respondents experiencing upward occupational class mobility due to the changing occupational structure of South African Society, which at the same time is counter acted by considerable downward occupational class mobility. Further research within the field of mobility study is required. In particular a nationally representative sample is needed to better analyse the flow of labour in South Africa as well as examine in greater detail the reproduction of inequality across generations and the implications this has for opportunity and advantage in successive generations.

1. Introduction

Since the 1960's South African society has experienced some fundamental shifts in its occupational profile with specific reference to race distributions. The major shift in the occupational profile has occurred as a result of occupational mobility amongst Blacks[1] into previously White dominated occupations. This change has been reported by many studies covering the rise of inequality within race groups and the relative decline of inequality between race groups.

South Africa is a highly unequal society but very little is known about the social dimensions of this inequality. The economic dimensions of inequality have been examined in great detail. Because of this, we know the patterns of income distribution, which in turn have been correlated to, education, access to employment and the claims that can be made on the state or kin (Seekings, 2003). We also understand the racial division of labour in South Africa through the many studies that have examined its pattern and change through the Apartheid years into the 1990's. Here specific reference can be made to the work done by Crankshaw (1997) who examined the changing division of labour in urban South Africa and effectively tracked the advancement of Blacks into previously White dominated occupational groups as racial policy began to wane. Work completed by Nattrass and Seekings (2001) have also taught us that Black and White are no longer synonymous with rich and poor and tie into Crankshaw's (1997) conclusions that occupational class inequality is becoming increasingly significant. Further research conducted by Nattrass and Seekings (2005) has shown that the basis of inequality has shifted near the end of the twentieth century from race to class. Very little research has been completed in the area of intergenerational occupational mobility and as a result we do not know what this has meant for the reproduction of inequality

[1] When using the term 'Black' in this research project I refer to the Apartheid racial classification system where Black refers to Coloureds and Africans as a combined racial group. For this study Indians also fall into this group, as there are negligible numbers of this particular race group in the sample to be used as the main data source for the analysis.

across generations. It has been argued that sociologists have yet to make a major contribution to the study of contemporary inequalities in South Africa within social topics such as the reproduction of inequality across generations (Seekings, 2003). The argument has been raised that the basis of social stratification has shifted since the end of Apartheid from race to class (Seekings, 2003 & Nattrass & Seekings, 2005) and hence the transmission of advantage across generations is of considerable importance. This is because divisions within race groups through growing intra - racial inequality are emphasised by a growing Black middle class. The growth of this class is evident when one considers the emergence of the Black middle class made apparent in everyday life such as the nature of advertising (Seekings, 2003), which clearly targets this particular market, as well as the large amount of data available regarding the spending patterns of more affluent Black members of society (Burger, Burger and van der Berg, 2003). Coupled to this is a Black working class that is becoming poorer because of rising unemployment. The result has been that the gap between the rich and poor is increasing as is evident in South Africa's high Gini-coefficient figure of 0.60 (Leibbrandt, Woolard and Bhorat, 2000). Inequality in South Africa, which has been in large part based on racial lines, is changing with inter-racial inequality increasingly being overshadowed by intra-racial inequality (Crankshaw and Parnell, 2002). However we still don't know about the extent of occupational mobility (we are pretty sure that the growth of the black middle class is due in large part to occupational mobility, but not the precise extent). We also don't know much about the character of social mobility. In other words, from which occupational classes are the black middle class being drawn?

With the literature pointing to the increasing importance of occupational class inequality in post-Apartheid South Africa it seems appropriate for sociologists to examine the gap in the knowledge identified by Seekings (2003), that is the reproduction of occupational class inequality across generations. Intergenerational occupational mobility is a tool that can be used to gauge the persistence of material advantage from one generation to the next. By examining the pattern and structure of intergenerational occupational mobility we can answer fundamental questions about opportunity, class and privilege

(Hout, 1983). For South Africa, mobility research is of considerable importance as it tracks the opportunities of class that might be transferred to or have impact on the next generation. To date only one study of intergenerational occupational mobility has been conducted in South Africa covering a small survey of Africans in the early 1980's by Schneier (1983). The gap in the knowledge identified by Seekings is thus clear. The Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey of the year 2000 provides us with the necessary data and opportunity to study the phenomenon of intergenerational occupational mobility. This research project aims to address this gap in the knowledge and locate its findings within the context of international studies.

2. The Research Topic

This research project aims to examine the patterns of intergenerational occupational mobility evident in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. The Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain (KMP) survey of the year 2000 serves as the main data source for this task. In a society such as South Africa, where the majority of the population is dependent on wage incomes, any analysis of class has its starting point in occupations (Seekings, 2003). As such the intergenerational occupational mobility of respondents in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District is the focus of this research.

The literature points to the emergence and growth of a Black middle class but at the same time shows a South African society that encompasses a massive underclass of people. These people experience high levels of unemployment that contribute to poverty (Seekings, 2000). The questions to be asked within the realm of mobility are:

What are the occupational origins of the Black middle class? Is South African society producing opportunities for upward occupational class mobility for the working class or is the growth in the emerging Black middle class based on middle class social origins? In other words is the middle class reproducing itself?

This research project aims to examine these questions by firstly determining the patterns of mobility that have been evident in other countries. These studies of mobility have the advantage of utilizing large data sets representative of entire countries' populations. By contrast this study is limited to a specific area in Cape Town as well as to the African and Coloured races. Comparisons between these studies are therefore not easy but differences and similarities will be highlighted. The aim is to describe the patterns of mobility in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District and to provide reasons for the existence of these patterns. This study is a first step on the path of mobility analysis in South Africa. The ultimate goal would be the collection and analysis of more survey data at a national level providing a

better picture of the process of transmission of advantage and opportunity across generations. The patterns of mobility identified in the study area have to be located within the broader shifts of the occupational profile witnessed in South Africa over the past three to four decades. This is achieved by examining the changing occupational profile of South Africa, in particular for Africans and Coloureds, for the period 1965 to 1990 based on the work of Crankshaw (1997).

The end product of this study is to provide evidence of intergenerational mobility in South Africa albeit on a small scale. This evidence will be compared to other studies of intergenerational mobility both in South Africa and abroad and the reasons for the similarities and differences in the patterns of mobility witnessed in this study and others will be put forward.

I have found that the pattern of intergenerational mobility in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District has similarities and differences to studies conducted in South Africa and other countries. It is similar in that there does appear to be an expansion of the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class that has contributed to the levels of upward mobility for Blacks in this area. The differences however are more interesting. Unlike the international studies, downward occupational mobility exceeds upward occupational mobility. There does appear to be an increase in the numbers of unskilled manual workers, which was not witnessed in any other study. The South African evidence also points to a decrease in demand for unskilled manual workers. Thus this peculiarity had to be explained.

I conclude that the design of the sample, which effectively under represents and excludes Black middle class townships in the Cape Town area has resulted in an area effect. This means that because the area sampled is more working class in nature, it captures those respondents who would most likely fall into working class occupational groups. Those respondents who have been upwardly mobile in terms of occupational mobility are more likely to have moved out of the area or simply have never resided in the area. The end result is that downward occupational mobility is emphasised. Added to this is

the high unemployment rate of South Africa and the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, which has meant that respondents who cannot find employment seek job opportunities in the informal sector. Unskilled manual labour has therefore increased but this has been a result of respondents entering the informal sector (as street vendors on a small scale scratching out a living). This level of informal sector activity is a 'desperate response' to unemployment rather than meaningful work or a good source of income. I have also found that respondents in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District were downwardly mobile across many occupational classes, which was not the case in other studies. This is a result of parents who would be classified as middle class being located in precarious occupational class positions. The children of these parents do not receive the advantages of their parents' occupational class position as was witnessed in other studies and due to high unemployment rates find themselves in the Unskilled Manual Labour occupational category in the informal sector. The parents of these respondents appear not to have been able to transmit advantage in the form of education and good social networks to their children because their occupational class positions were located at the lower end of the middle class occupational groupings. The limitations of the small data set used have to be considered and this study has shown that more research is required within the field of intergenerational occupational mobility studies. In particular the need exists for the analysis of occupational mobility for the country as a whole using nationally representative survey data.

3.1. What is meant by social mobility?

Miller (1956) states that social mobility is the significant movement in an individual's economic, social and political position. This movement need not be restricted to the individual alone and can be applicable to an entire stratum within the social system. The choice of economic, social or political or even a combination of the three depends on the problem being addressed. Abercrombie and Warde (1994) make the specific link to social class and state that social mobility is the process by which people move from one social class to another. Given the overwhelming dependence of South African households on wages as a source of income, occupations must be the starting point for analysis of class in South Africa (Seekings, 2003).

This research study has specifically focused on the intergenerational occupational mobility of individuals. Intergenerational mobility cross-classifies a respondent's parent's occupation to the subject's first or current occupation and is a comparison of occupations across two generations (Hout, 1983). Intergenerational occupational mobility is linked to class because as most analyses of class formation suggest, class boundaries are to some extent lines of separation between certain occupational groups (Schneier, 1983). I am not, however, concerned with mapping the class structure of contemporary South Africa nor am I concerned with entering into the debate about which class schema is the best tool for analysis. As Goldthorpe and Erikson have stated "concepts, like all other ideas should be judged by their consequences, not their antecedents" (1993). In the case of this research it is the examination of occupational mobility that is of greatest concern within the context of South Africa. For a highly unequal society like this one, the study of mobility is important in tracking the shifts in the causes of the reproduction of inequality across generations since past racial discrimination cannot bear all the blame (Seekings, 2003).

3.2. Social Mobility – Is it of any importance?

In examining the patterns of intergenerational occupational mobility evident in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District (MD) in the City of Cape Town, we have to start this exercise by asking ourselves what is the importance of understanding mobility. Erikson and Goldthorpe (1993) advance the best answer to the importance of mobility in their attempt to lay out the leading task of theories of industrial society. They state that these theories shed light on the relationships that exist between the structure of the division of labour and to the main patterns of social interaction that are observable within industrial societies (Erikson and Goldthorpe, 1993). They agree with Stinchcombe (1983) in seeing the social structure as being 'peopled'. Movement of individuals among positions defined by the structure of the division of labour becomes important because the distribution of individuals within this structure is related to the creation of the identities and interests from which actions arise (Erikson and Goldthorpe, 1993). Put differently, how people attain their socio-economic position is important because it is this position that locates them within a specific class (Ishida, 1993).

The attainment of these socio-economic positions is measured by examining the permanence or impermanence with which individuals are associated with different positions. In other words, in arriving at a socio-economic position, does that person remain there or would certain factors cause movement into other positions? As Erikson and Goldthorpe summarise so efficiently "mobility rates and patterns may be seen as a persisting and pervasive factor shaping the ways in which members of a society define themselves and in turn the goals they pursue and values they seek to uphold or contest" (1993, p. 2). In broad terms the importance of studying mobility is clear but what relevance does it have within a society like South Africa, which is not an advanced industrialised country?

Within South Africa it has been argued that the basis for social stratification has shifted since the end of Apartheid from race to class (Seekings, 2003). This is evident when one considers the emergence of the Black middle class

made apparent in everyday life such as the nature of advertising (Seekings, 2003), which clearly targets this particular market, as well as the large amount of data available regarding the spending patterns of more affluent Black members of society (Burger, Burger and van der Berg, 2003). The result is that inequality in South Africa, which has been in large part based on racial lines, is changing. In South Africa inter-racial inequality is increasingly being overshadowed by intra-racial inequality (Crankshaw and Parnell, 2002) and it is believed that intra-racial inequality will become an increasingly important contributor towards overall inequality in South Africa (Van der Berg and Marincowitz, 1999). The relevance of mobility studies within South Africa becomes important because it describes how class positions are reproduced over time and would contribute towards understanding the changing face of inequality from race to class. This study does, however, have limits with respect to understanding inequality but goes a long way in filling the gap in knowledge with respect to transmission of advantage over a generation.

The literature points to the emergence and growth of a Black middle class but at the same time shows a South African society that encompasses a massive underclass of households that are disadvantaged with high levels of unemployment contributing to poverty (Seekings, 2000). The questions to be asked within the realm of mobility are:

What are the occupational origins of the Black middle class? Is South African society producing opportunities for upward occupational class mobility for the working class or is the growth in the emerging Black middle class based on middle class social origins? In other words is the middle class reproducing itself?

It is extremely difficult to answer these questions for South Africa because there is a lack of good data necessary to address these queries. The aim of this study is to provide, using what limited data sources are available, some answers to the questions outlined above and hopefully direct future research into the study of mobility as well as encourage the development of surveys equipped with the correct tools for gathering the required data. To achieve

this it is necessary to examine the vast amounts of mobility studies conducted in other countries that provide insights and clues into the types and shape of mobility patterns. The aim is to establish the similarities and differences in mobility patterns witnessed between a section of South African society (that is the KMP area) and areas based in advanced industrial countries.

In undertaking a study of the intergenerational mobility of Black people in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, it is necessary to review similar studies. The scope of my study, although limited to a specific and relatively small geographical area relies nonetheless survey data. The data referred to has been collected from the population in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District using survey questionnaires. The sample was designed to be representative of all adults who were eighteen years or older in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial district (Butcher, Crankshaw & Welch, 2001). Although the area of this investigation is smaller than most mobility studies, a review of the larger projects adds value to this task by outlining conceptual and statistical techniques, which may be used. This study and its bigger brothers may not be directly comparable in terms of differences in sample size, geographical location and advanced versus emerging industrialized countries, but reviewing the larger studies reveals various factors that contribute to the understanding of mobility and helps focus the analysis. Where possible, comparisons will be made to these studies.

3.3. Mobility Terminology

When examining mobility patterns in industrialised countries, the problem arises whereby one has to use the language of mobility, which is riddled with theoretical and practical implications. I feel it therefore important to lay to rest some definitions relating to terminology and in so doing simultaneously outline the 'class schema' within which my analysis will be based.

As was noted in the first section, mobility is temporal in nature as it implies change over time and occupational mobility specifically looks at a person's occupations at two points in time (Hout, 2003). Occupational mobility is measured in a mobility table which cross-classifies persons according to these two points in time (Hout, 1983). Intergenerational mobility (which is the focus of this research report) is when an individual's position (in our case occupation) is compared with that of his parent/s and possibly of his grandparent/s (Glass and Hall, 1954).[2]

Authors of different studies have used various occupational classification systems based on theories of class. My aim is not to choose or prove which occupational class classification system is the best but rather use one that is most useful in terms of South African society and for comparability with previous studies. The authors Crankshaw (1997) and Seekings (2003) have shown that the Erikson and Goldthorpe occupational class classification system is most useful in the South African context because it allows for comparability and compares favourably to the data available to the analysis. Data collected by the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain (KMP) survey, which is the primary data source for this research project, has been coded using the South African Standard Classifications of Occupations (SASCO) (2003b) and this has proven adaptable to the class schema of Erikson and Goldthorpe.

[2] This study examines individuals' occupations compared to their parents, which is discussed in the methodology chapter.

As was explained earlier, mobility implies a change in an individual's economic position and in our case occupational class. Most studies of mobility make statements about whether mobility was upward; downward or where no mobility has occurred (referred to as immobility). These phrases bring some of the theoretical problems of mobility study into focus. Referring to upward, downward or immobility implies a hierarchy of occupations through which individuals can experience these movements. Blau and Duncan (1967) state that to investigate mobility, one has to rank occupations according to some occupational status score. Miller (1956) explains that this is problematic because these status scores do in some part convey the weight of people's subjective views as it incorporates the way people commonly rate occupations.

The problem is that the ranking of occupations expects subjective statements about occupations to be accurate statements about objective dimensions of jobs such as pay and skill requirements (Miller, 1956). Erikson and Goldthorpe state outright that their class schema does not embody a central hierarchical principle from which a regular ordering of classes might be derived (1993) but they do realise that hierarchical aspects of the schema can be recognised. This ranking aspect occurs as a three level schema and is a reflection of differences in rewards and in entry requirements into various classes.

Their hierarchy consists of the service class (which incorporates the service relationship occupations being professional, higher technical, administrative and managerial occupations as well as large employers), intermediate class with an aspect of the labour contracted class (which incorporates routine non-manual, lower technical and manual supervisory occupations as well as small employers and self-employed workers in industry and agriculture and skilled manual workers in industry) and the manual occupational class (which consists of the Semi-skilled and unskilled manual workers as well as Agricultural labourers and other workers in primary production).

Table A. Erikson and Goldthorpe Class Schema

3 Level Hierarchy	Class	Class Description
1	I	Higher-grade professionals, administrators and officials; managers in large industrial establishments; large proprietors
	II	Lower-grade professionals, administrators and officials; higher-grade technicians; managers in small industrial establishments; supervisors of non-manual employees
2	III	Routine non-manual workers: routine non-manual employees in administration and commerce; sales personnel; other rank-and-file service workers
	IV*a*	Small proprietors, artisans, etc., with employees
	IV*b*	Small proprietors, artisans, etc., without employees
	IV*c*	Farmers and small holders; other self-employed workers in primary production
	V	Lower-grade technicians; supervisors of manual workers
	VI	Skilled manual workers
3	VII*a*	Semi- and unskilled manual workers (not in agriculture, etc.)
	VII*b*	Agricultural and other workers in primary production

Source: Erikson and Goldthorpe. (1993) The Constant Flux, pgs. 38 – 39, 45, 123 - 125

My occupational class structure has been based on Erikson and Goldthorpe's (1993) class schema and the work of Crankshaw (1997) and Seekings (2003) as well as the South African Standard Classification of Occupations (SASCO) and is hierarchical taking into account which occupational class provides the most advantage to the next generation within the context of mobility studies. My occupational class hierarchy is as follows;

Managers and Professionals
Clerks, Sales and Service workers
Skilled Manual occupations
Semi-skilled Manual occupations
Unskilled Manual occupations

The above class schema has been constructed from groups of occupations, which is explained in greater detail in the methodology chapter as well as appendices. The hierarchical nature of the schema would imply that salaried professionals and managers would offer the greatest resources as a class of origin[3] and for which entry requirements would be most demanding. At the other end of the scale would be the Unskilled Manual occupational class, which would provide the least advantage as a class of origin and present the fewest barriers to entry. I have increased the three level hierarchy classification system of Erikson and Goldthorpe to five based on the nature of the data set used and the groupings of similar occupations which in the South African context creates groups that are socio-economically different from each other but are relatively internally socio-economically homogenous. It is at this point that I wish to examine the patterns of mobility evident in industrialised countries and I will locate the occupational classes various authors have used within the schema outlined above where possible.

[3] Origin class refers to the occupational class of the respondent's father, or head of household and in my case the respondent's parent while growing up. This is explained in greater detail in the methodology chapter.

3.4. Patterns of Intergenerational Mobility in Other Countries

There have been numerous studies of mobility in various countries across the world. These studies have ranged from examining patterns of mobility within specific regions to comparing the differences in rates of mobility between countries. The largest studies have been based in the United States of America and Britain where there is a wealth of survey data. In most studies the patterns of mobility examined are but a starting point for the more complex analysis of relative mobility rates, the core model of Social Fluidity[4] of countries or the examination of the FJH[5] hypothesis. Featherman, Jones and Hauser (FJH, the authors of the FJH hypothesis) proposed that assuming a market economy and at a minimum a nuclear family system existed, it is the pattern of 'genotypical' mobility that will in all industrial societies prove to be 'basically the same'. The Core Model of Social Fluidity tests the FJH hypothesis and finds that the patterns of fluidity that are common in industrial nations are generated in more complex ways than Featherman, Jones and Hauser have envisaged.

My task to examine the patterns of mobility in industrialized countries was thus made easy because of the numerous studies available but at the same time this task has been extremely difficult in that most studies do not focus on the patterns of mobility but move on to grander heights. The following chapter takes a broad look at a number of mobility studies, in particular those conducted in the United States of America and Britain and attempts to outline some of the patterns of intergenerational occupational mobility. This review has revealed that there are similarities in the patterns witnessed in the industrialized countries. In particular there is the effect of the growth of non-manual occupations that has had an effect on mobility in all the studies to be reviewed. This chapter effectively builds up the evidence of the types of

---

[4] See Erikson and Goldthorpe, 1993. *The Constant Flux,* that refers to the study of relative mobility within a class structure. Since this is not the main focus of this research project I have not provided details of their theory but this can be examined in the book as mentioned.

[5] Featherman, D.L., Jones, F.L., and Hauser, R.M., (1975, p. 340), 'Assumptions of Social Mobility Research in the US: The Case of Occupational Status', *Social Science Research, 4.*

mobility patterns witnessed in the industrialized countries and points to the predominance of upward mobility.

Michel de Sève and Gèrard Bouchard used data extracted from parish registers of the Saguenay Region in Quèbec, Canada from 1842 to 1971 to explore the usefulness of the Erikson and Goldthorpe "core model of social fluidity" (Erikson & Goldthorpe, 1993) in describing the historical evolution of relative mobility in a frontier region (de Sève & Bouchard, 1998). These authors also stated that one of their main objectives was to facilitate the study of intergenerational social mobility over a relatively long time span. The researchers tried, amongst other exercises, to compare the occupations of the fathers to those of the sons when both were near 50 years of age. Since their main objective was the exploration of the usefulness of Erikson and Goldthorpe's core model of Social Fluidity, they adapted the occupational classification system of these authors.

De Sève and Bouchard proposed that intergenerational mobility can be examined from two points of view: absolute mobility and relative or "net" mobility where total absolute mobility describes the total percentages of mobiles and immobiles among all the cases observed for each period of time in their study. These percentages are however affected by the differences of social position distributions between fathers and sons. The authors followed the class schema of Erikson and Goldthorpe and thus identified mobility within and between the three levels (strata) mentioned in the previous section. Upward and downward mobilities are defined by intergenerational mobility between classes in two different strata, while horizontal mobility describes exchanges between two classes within a stratum (de Sève & Bouchard, 1998). They found that there was a clear rise in upward mobility amongst their sample but also stated that the increase in immobility and in short (horizontal) mobility rates suggest the appearance of barriers between the strata. They also found that it became more difficult for farmers' sons (as well as rural workers' sons) to have access to non-rural classes (de Sève & Bouchard, 1998).

Marja Järvelä of the Research Institute for Social Sciences at the University of Tampere worked with the Finnish research group participating in the comparative project on class structure and class-consciousness. The analysis of intergenerational mobility was conducted on the Finnish sample from the project above and included a total of 1,311 respondents located within the class structure according to their own and breadwinner's class position (Järvelä, 1983). The class classification used by Järvelä is based on E. O. Wright's scheme with some specifications. As was the case with the Quèbec study, the author has examined social background in different social classes based on the cross-tabulation of the respondents' class positions compared to the class positions of persons from a previous generation (having some relation to the respondent either economically or through family ties). In this case instead of fathers' occupations, the occupations of breadwinners are used. The sample size for the study is relatively small but Järvelä notes that with a direct sample on class structure, statistically the classes are of very unequal magnitude; hence problems of precision cannot be avoided.

The authors found that small holders (farmers with less than 20ha) formed the largest background group in each of the respondents' current occupational classes (Järvelä, 1983). In other words each of the occupational classes, which the respondents occupied, showed a high proportion of small holders as being the occupational class of origin. Within wageworker groups industrial worker backgrounds are also important being the second largest class origin in most cases within the respondents' current occupational classes.

The study revealed that when examining the data across generations the relative share of wageworkers among the respondents themselves increased when moving from older to younger generations with the share of wageworker background following the same pattern. The author concludes that in terms of essential class basis, Finnish society was turning into one of wageworkers. Intergenerational mobility between wageworker classes was found to be considerable but self-recruitment amongst wageworker classes was rather

restricted (Järvelä, 1983). With respect to permanency of social classes in Finland, it is concluded that due to rapid capitalist development and occupational change, intergenerational permanency of class positions was very low except in the case of farmers.

Authors Glass and Hall (1954) studied social mobility in Great Britain over the period 1889 to 1929 and is one of the earlier mobility studies. Their survey covered England and Wales and included 3,397 respondents. Like the previous studies they examined the respondents' occupational positions compared to that of their fathers' positions. Their study was limited to males because they used status scales for occupations that were not available for women. Their occupational classification system mirrors the schema I have used in broad terms and therefore I will make reference to their findings using my categories for simplification.

Glass and Hall's figures show that there was an increase in size in all-occupational categories from the fathers' to respondents' generations except for the categories of semi-skilled manual workers and unskilled manual workers. They found that status remained constant across generations most noticeably for Skilled Manual occupations. Self-recruitment appeared to be the highest among the skilled manual worker category. This meant that for their sample, of the respondents whose fathers were skilled manual workers, a large proportion of them were now skilled manual workers themselves. When this was examined in closer detail taking into account the relative mobility rates and comparing ratios of actual to expected frequencies the levels of self-recruitment increased as one went from skilled manual workers into the higher status occupations culminating in the professional and high administrative occupations showing the highest levels of self-recruitment (Glass and Hall, 1954). They also found that the shifts upward or downward tend to be of a short distance variety meaning that the respondents who were mobile either up or down ended up in occupational destinations close to their fathers' occupation (that is their origin). Overall there were considerable changes in status between the successive generations. The tendency to be upwardly mobile was most marked in the lower status occupational categories

but this distance would be short and respondents would tend to be fairly close to their fathers' level (Glass and Hall, 1954).

Glass and Hall found that the higher the status of fathers, the smaller the proportions of sons in skilled manual, semi-skilled manual and unskilled manual work. Their investigations revealed that the highest intensity of association between parent and respondents' generations, based on relative mobility calculations, was found amongst subjects in the managerial and professional occupational categories. Another category that shared this high association across generations was that of unskilled manual occupations. They explain this observation by pointing to the characteristics of the categories concerned. The managers and professional occupational categories are described as being 'exclusivist' in character whereas the unskilled manual occupations category is seen as having a 'residual' character (Glass and Hall, 1954). There is a slight increase in the size of the unskilled manual occupations category from fathers' to subjects' generations but there is not considerable downward movement from 'higher' status occupations into this category.

Tully, Jackson and Curtis (1970) used data collected by Rogoff (1953) in a study of mobility rates over a long time period in Indianapolis, Indiana in the United States of America. Rogoff covered two periods in the area concerned (1910 and 1940) and focused on intergenerational mobility from fathers' to sons' generations. She found that for both periods in question sons were more likely to enter their fathers' occupations than any other single occupation. Tully, *et el* collapsed Rogoff's ten category occupational list to five. Their occupational categorisation has broad agreement with the system I have used but there are differences that deserve to be noted. I will therefore use their classification system in reporting their findings.

Tully, Jackson and Curtis occupational classification list

Professional or business

Clerical or sales

Skilled manual

Semi- or unskilled

Farmer

It must be noted that my occupational classification list does not include farmers as the Mitchell's Plain MD is predominantly urban and hence this category has not featured in my calculations. In Tully, *et el*'s (1970) study the farmer occupational category disappears for the sons' generation as there were no farmers in their sample. They extended Rogoff's study to include their sample for 1967 and made specific adjustments to ensure their data was comparable to hers. Looking at outflow[6] data presented by Tully, *et el* it is observed that the professional or business occupational category shows the highest level of constancy across the two generations for the updated sample of 1967. In other words for all sons who had fathers employed as professionals or in business, a high proportion of these sons were now employed in the same occupational category. It is observed that there is not much downward movement from the higher status occupational categories into the semi- or unskilled labour category.

Their figures also suggest that sons with manual occupational origins (that is skilled manual and semi- or unskilled manually employed fathers) are heavily concentrated in manual occupations. There is some movement out sons out of these occupational origins into professional or business positions but only sons with skilled manual origins showing any significant movement.

For the time period in question there seems to be an increase in upward mobility (Tully *et el*, 1970). For the 1967 sample it was found that respondents were less likely to be downwardly mobile and more likely to be

[6] Row percentages are referred to as outflow percentages and record the distribution of destinations (that is the sons' occupations) for each category in the fathers' generation. This is explained in greater detail under the methodology section, *Inflow and Outflow percentages.*

upwardly mobile than previous years. The authors tentatively suggest based on their correlation calculations that there appears to be a trend towards greater occupational inheritance.

Kingston (2000) tackles the question of mobility by locating it within the context of how it affects class formation. This is evident when one examines his understanding of absolute mobility rates. He describes these absolute rates as determining how social class distributes life chances and how diverse the origins are of those in particular classes. Kingston recognises that in most mobility studies, the classification of occupations are not designed to represent any theoretical statement about class structure but is rather an expression of occupational hierarchy (Kingston, 2000).

Kingston uses data collected by Featherman and Hauser (1978) on the intergenerational mobility experienced from fathers' to sons' generations in American society. Unlike the Indianapolis study, the data used is aimed at describing American society as a whole and not limited to a specific area. The occupational categorization method used was based on a five-category aggregation that tapped common class distinctions (Kingston, 2000). These were:

Upper non-manual occupations (managers, professionals, non-retail sales)
Lower non-manual (proprietors and clerical, retail sales)
Upper manual (foremen and craftsmen)
Lower manual (service, operative labourers)
Farm (owners and workers)

Looking at inflow[7] patterns Kingston finds that a substantial majority of men from non-farm origins had different class origins. The managers, professionals and non-retail sales class showed the greatest diversity of origins. He concludes that the prime recruiting ground for the middle class

[7] Column percentages are referred to as inflow percentages and record the distribution of origins (that is fathers' occupations) for each destination (that is sons' occupational categories). This is explained in greater detail under the methodology section, *Inflow and Outflow percentages*.

was the blue-collar working class and farmers. He also finds that relatively few service and operative labourers fell from middle class status but still points out that this group also has a degree of diverse origins (Kingston, 2000). In summary he describes the overall pattern of outflow by concluding that few American capitalists were beneficiaries of birth into a capitalist family.

When examining outflow patterns, Kingston notes that upward mobility exceeded downward mobility. The sons of managers, professionals and non-retail sales fathers had the most notable occupational inheritance. But there is downward movement out of this class. He finds that there is movement across the non-manual/manual distinction in classes. Sons of working class origins commonly become middle class themselves. He concludes that the outflow percentages show the odds of attaining a higher class position than sons' fathers favoured those advantaged by family circumstances. But these chances were just relatively good. Kingston states that classes (no matter the categorization used) are not reproduced intergenerationally. The diversity of social origins reflects widespread mobility that is generally upward in American society (Kingston, 2000). These high rates of mobility have been attributed to the large-scale shift away from farming and blue-collar occupations and the increase in white-collar/middle class occupations. Kingston notes that there is downward mobility but those who are downwardly mobile, for the most part, do not fall many places in the occupational hierarchy. This tends to affirm what has been found in the British studies that sons' occupations tend to cluster around that of their fathers'.

Abercrombie and Warde (1994) review some of the findings of Goldthorpe, Llewellyn and Payne (1980) regarding intergenerational mobility in Britain. They explain that earlier surveys showed that classes in Britain were largely self-recruiting (that is sons would end up in the same occupational class as their fathers) but Goldthorpe *et el* showed other results. Based on Goldthorpe's results (1980) Abercrombie and Warde note much movement between classes. As was the case with Kingston's study of mobility in America, British sons' current occupational classes (1980) showed varied social origins. Higher professional and managerial fathers were the most

likely to pass on their occupational class positions to their sons (Abercrombie and Warde, 1994). The routine white collar workers occupational class showed the lowest levels of self-recruitment with the sons of such workers distributed fairly evenly across all occupational classes. Abercrombie and Warde note that the chances of ending up in the professional and managerial class are weighted heavily in favour of those sons with fathers who were employed in this occupational class category. As was the case with Kingston's findings for American society, there is downward mobility but the chances of being downwardly mobile across many occupational classes decreased as sons' occupational class origin status increased.

Much of the upward mobility witnessed in the British data was not in fact a result of Britain becoming less dependent on class origins. This mobility can in large part be attributed to changes in the occupational class structure. Here specific mention must be made of the growth in service class positions (Abercrombie and Warde, 1994). Goldthorpe (1980) suggests that in Britain the sons of service class fathers have had the advantage of material resources accumulated by fathers in lucrative careers as well as having the capacity to secure high educational qualifications for their sons. This has meant that these sons were protected against downward mobility. The service class refers to categories I and II in Goldthorpe's class schema and equates to my occupational class of Managers and Professionals. Abercrombie and Warde note that in Goldthorpe's study the working class appeared to be intergenerationally stable being composed of predominantly sons of manual workers.

The overall picture thus is one of relatively high levels of absolute intergenerational mobility in Britain since the end of the Second World War characterised by upward movement into the service class. This mobility was in large part due to the upgrading of the occupational structure through the growth in service class occupational positions. There is higher self-recruitment in the classes that would have the most resources for transmission of status and greatest barriers to entry into these occupational classes, namely the managerial and professional occupational class. Ivan

Reid (1998) also uses Goldthorpe's tables (1980) in reviewing intergenerational mobility in Britain. He too points out, like Abercrombie and Warde, that social mobility may be easier upward than downward in British society post World War Two. He identifies that upward mobility increased over time with younger men having better chances of gaining service class jobs and a lower risk of downward mobility.

Marshall, Rose, Newby and Vogler (1988) use data collected for Britain to compare male versus female mobility chances and voting behaviour based on the class of the chief childhood supporter. They too utilised Goldthorpe's occupational class schema. Like Goldthorpe and Kingston's studies of intergenerational mobility they found that the chances of downward mobility decreased as the respondents' occupational class origin status increased or moved towards the service class. The service class also showed the highest levels of self-recruitment but this was more pronounced for males than females (Marshall, *et el*, 1988). They conclude that women are more likely than men from similar backgrounds to arrive at routine non-manual class destinations no matter what their class of origin. Men were found more likely to arrive at service class or working class positions (Marshall, *et el*, 1988). Their analysis reveals like previous studies, that in their sample the composition of occupational classes had varied occupational class origins with no single origin occupational class contributing significant proportions to the composition of respondents' destination occupational classes.

Marshall and Rose (1997) use intergenerational mobility data for Britain to answer the question of whether the British class structure has experienced a process of proletarianization. They suggest that the mobility data produced argues against this claim and points to a shift away from manual labour towards both routine and specialised white-collar work (Marshall and Rose, 1997). The end result is a shrinking of the working class with an increase in the size of the service class. Marshall and Rose found that their study showed an upgrading rather than a degrading with regards to occupational class position. They conclude that there has been significant upward social mobility into skilled and routine non-manual work with no counterbalancing

downward movement. Their study, like others covering British society, show the propensity for mobility to be upward and that this mobility has been into the expanding service class. Payne and Abbot (1990), who examined mobility patterns for men and women in Scotland, also note that upward mobility tends to exceed downward mobility.

Marshall, Sydorenko and Roberts (1997) conducted an analysis of intergenerational mobility in Russia based on a sample survey of 1,150 respondents in the year 1991. They too have used the Goldthorpe occupational classification system and have specifically focused on gender differences in mobility. Their results show sectoral changes evident in Russia made apparent in the declining numbers of respondents involved in agriculture from origin class to respondents' current occupational classes (Sydorenko, *et el*, 1997). There was also an expansion of non-manual work as was the case with all the studies mentioned thus far. Their figures do show a decline overall in numbers of people employed in semi-skilled and unskilled manual occupations from origin to destination occupational classes. Like the studies of the United States and Britain, their study reveals high occupational inheritance for the service class. There is also a decline in the chance of downward mobility as respondents' origin class status increases but this is not to the low levels witnessed in Britain and the United States.

The authors confirm that intergenerational class mobility was common in communist Russia but most of this was short range in the form of mobility between unskilled and skilled urban occupations (Sydorenko, *et el*, 1997). Long-range mobility from the working and in some cases even the agricultural classes to the service class were relatively common. This was not the case for Britain and the United States, which showed short-range mobility being more common in these countries. Downward mobility from the service class to the unskilled working class did not happen often. For females and males in general there appeared to be considerable upward mobility out of unskilled manual occupations with significant proportions moving into the service class. This seems to be in contrast to the studies of mobility in the industrialised countries discussed above. The authors conclude that contemporary Russia

has a relatively large 'salariat', a small and shrinking agricultural population and a large (though diminishing) working class that is considered to be a unique mobility profile amongst advanced nations. They state that the small sample size for their study limits its usefulness in comparison to other larger studies but the fact that their sample represented the whole of Russian society gives it an advantage over previous mobility studies in that country.

3.5. Summary of the Mobility Patterns Witnessed in Other Countries

All the mobility studies reviewed in this chapter have pointed to the predominance of upward mobility over downward mobility. The degree and intensity of this dominance varies according to when the studies were carried out. In particular, older studies still reflect more upward than downward intergenerational mobility but this increases over time with post World War Two studies showing an even greater difference. All the post World War Two studies recognise the growth of non-manual occupations and attribute most upward mobility to this fact. Intergenerational occupational mobility witnessed in these studies thus showed movement out of working class occupations into the expanding non-manual occupational classes (middle class). The highest status occupational categories in all studies showed the highest levels of occupational inheritance. This confirms the ideas of Erikson and Goldthorpe who stated that in developing their hierarchy of occupations, the service class reflects the best opportunity for parents to transmit class position to their children because of material resources and providing access to high levels of education for their children as well as having the greatest barriers for entry into this class. Most of the studies revealed that intergenerational mobility was short range with respondents' occupations clustering around those of their parents' occupational classes. The studies revealed that the higher the occupational origin status of the respondents' parents the less likely the respondents were to experience downward mobility across many occupational categories.

The Russian study is the only case where there are some differences in the patterns of mobility. It showed that there appeared to be considerable upward

mobility out of unskilled manual occupations with significant proportions moving into the service class as well as the skilled manual class. This was not witnessed in such significant proportions in any of the other studies. It is however noted that the relative mobility calculations reveal that Russian society was not 'more open' than its capitalist neighbours and there were indeed similarities to British mobility in particular when comparing mobility rates of Russian men to British men.

The question to ask now, however, is how does South African mobility patterns compare to other countries?

3.6. Patterns of Intergenerational Mobility in South Africa

The only study to have examined patterns of occupational mobility in South Africa was conducted by Steffen Schneier in 1983. He examined occupational mobility patterns for Blacks[8] using surveys for Soweto and various Cape Peninsula townships (Nyanga, Langa and Gugulethu). Schneier used an eleven-category class classification system that was ranked as follows:

Professional
Bourgeois
Senior Clerical
Clerical
Blue-collar technical
Supervisory
Artisan
Skilled manual
Low non-manual
Semi-skilled
Unskilled
Farm

As was the case with the Indianapolis mobility study and my own study, the farm occupational category was dropped from the respondents' generation because there were no farm observations. Although his categorisation is by and large different to my own, certain comparisons can be made due to the ranking of the occupations. Schneier looked at intergenerational mobility between respondents and their household heads' (while growing up) generations.

In general Schneier found that a greater proportion of respondents in the Soweto survey are upwardly mobile than in the Peninsula townships. His surveys revealed a barrier to upward mobility from manual to non-manual occupations when considering relative occupational mobility rates. Since

[8] Schneier uses the term Black to refer to people classified as African under the old Apartheid racial classification system whereas I use the term to refer to African and Coloured people combined.

Schneier's figures for the Peninsula townships are too small to produce accurate results I will limit my review of his findings to the Soweto component of his study.

For the Soweto survey Schneier found that in terms of outflow percentages, occupational status remained constant most notably in the semi-skilled and unskilled occupational categories. Unlike studies conducted in Britain, the United States of America and Russia, the occupational categories of managers and professionals did not show high levels of occupational inheritance. Conversely he does find downward mobility out of the professional class into most notably the clerical occupational class and to a far lesser extent, manual occupations. There is upward occupational mobility for respondents with skilled manual, semi-skilled manual and unskilled manual origins into non-manual destinations. Respondents with clerical origins show the highest absolute upward mobility into the professional occupational category.

Schneier notes that where the household head was employed in low status occupational categories (based on the ranking described above) the smaller was the corresponding proportion of subjects in the middle to upper categories (Schneier, 1983). He concludes that subjects from lower status origins, tend to be employed in less skilled manual occupations. Respondents whose household head was employed in the professional occupational category are concentrated in other non-manual occupational categories.

There is a considerable drop in unskilled manual employment from the household heads' to respondents' generations. Upward mobility out of this occupational category is mostly confined to other manual occupations. A small amount of growth is witnessed in the clerical occupations from household heads' to respondents' generations with the professional occupational category remaining relatively the same size across generations (Schneier, 1983).

In terms of inflow percentages Schneier's results show that consistently high

proportions of the respondents in all occupational categories in the respondents' generation were recruited from unskilled manual occupational class origins. Schneier cites two reasons for this result. Firstly he attributes the figures to the large size of this occupational category in the household heads' generation and secondly because of the rapid decline of the size of this category for the respondents' generation. This is a marked difference to findings in the industrialised countries examined earlier where unskilled manual labour was also on the decline but did not supply labour in high proportions to the respondents' different occupational classes

For Soweto Schneier found upward mobility exceeding downward mobility but this was assisted by the growth of more skilled occupations that subsequently required recruitment from other 'lower' occupational categories because these growing occupations could not satisfy their expansion from within their own ranks. Schneier found that African movement during the period under consideration was increasingly pronounced into skilled manual and non-manual middle class occupations. At the same time he notes a decrease in the proportion of Africans in unskilled manual employment. He concludes that even though there had been some 'blurring' of the racial hierarchical division of labour (in particular at skilled manual, lower non-manual and supervisory levels), the African workforce would continue to be concentrated in manual occupations (Schneier, 1983).

3.7. What has the Reviews of International Mobility Studies and the South African Mobility Study Revealed?

It becomes clear after reviewing the numerous mobility studies that intergenerational mobility is occurring in all cases studied. The difference, however, in the pattern of absolute mobility rates lie in the way the various countries and specific regions have responded to occupational structure changes and the local factors at work in the countries concerned. It has to be noted that direct comparison between nations or areas is problematic in that different occupational classifications systems may have been used, as well as variation in ranking of occupations or even the composition of samples (in some cases males only, in others females and males, some use household heads while others use respondents' fathers or parents, others are limited to specific race groups) (Schneier, 1983). The exercise is not totally fruitless as the broad trends revealed by the various studies can be compared even if it means doing so at a crude level.

The studies do reveal that occupational inheritance is strong in the highest status occupational categories. There does seem to exist a barrier to mobility between non-manual and manual occupations. Intergenerational mobility does appear to be predominantly of the short-range type with respondents' occupations clustering around those of their parents' occupations. The limited study of South African intergenerational mobility (due to small sample size compared to some international studies) has shown that unskilled manual origins are persistent in all occupational categories. This is unique to the Soweto study. Like the international studies the Soweto data showed that higher status class origins guarded against downward mobility across many occupational categories. All the studies recognised the influence that the changing occupational structure has had on patterns of mobility. Schneier investigated this change in occupational structure for South Africa by using data from the South African Manpower Surveys. It would seem then appropriate to examine the changing occupational structure of South Africa using extended data from the Manpower Surveys in work done by Owen Crankshaw (1997).

3.8. The Changing Occupational Structure in South Africa: 1960's – 1990's

Social mobility is the process by which people move from one class to another and is usually estimated by reference to occupational positions (Abercrombie & Warde, 1994). These occupational positions and their lines of separation, when considered in terms of occupational groups, are commonly viewed by most analysis of class formation as a reflection of class boundaries (Schneier, 1983). These occupational classes are meaningful social groupings as their members share life chances and social experiences (Blau & Duncan, 1967). This study is particularly concerned with the movement of people from one occupational class to another between generations, referred to as intergenerational mobility (where movement or mobility is measured from a parent's occupation or origin variable to the subject's current occupation or destination variable) (Hout, 1983). But intergenerational mobility cannot be put down to the subject's dependence on class origins (origin variable) alone. Aspects of occupational mobility can be attributed to changes in the occupational structure (Abercrombie & Warde, 1994). Since intergenerational mobility is temporal in nature as it measures differences across generations (Hout, 2003), the exogenous factors brought to bear by changes in the occupational structure of a society, which in itself changes over time (Blau & Duncan, 1967), need to be considered.

This chapter outlines the changing division of labour (i.e. the occupational structure) in urban South African society from the 1960's to the 1990's. These decades capture a period in South African history where the dominance of Apartheid policies, its decline and eventual abolishment have meant that the occupational structure has undergone various changes. The time period in question effectively covers the years of working life for respondents and their parents from the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey conducted in the year 2000. By outlining changes in the occupational structure, patterns of mobility between the parent's and respondent's respective generations can be located within this structure, which constitutes the framework of social mobility (Blau & Duncan, 1967) and would help explain various levels of mobility observed

(answering the question of whether this mobility is attributable to the changing occupational structure and its demands or a narrowing in class differentials) (Abercrombie & Warde, 1994).

Owen Crankshaw's study of black advancement over the period 1965 to 1990 provides an excellent picture of the changing occupational structure of urban employment and is most relevant for the area of study (Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain) as inhabitants in this area are predominantly African or Coloured. What follows is a description based on Crankshaw's findings, of the changing occupational structure focusing on African as well as Coloured advancement.

African advancement into traditionally white jobs was uneven over the period 1965 to 1990 with certain occupational classes showing better permeability than others (Crankshaw, 1997). Prior to the Apartheid period, Africans predominantly filled the worst paid and most labour intensive occupations. These included unskilled manual jobs and semi-skilled machine operative work in the mining, manufacturing and construction sectors. Within the service sector unskilled and menial jobs (cleaning and servicing) were also predominantly occupied by Africans.

In the 1960's, employment growth in unskilled and semi-skilled occupations was filled by Africans and to a degree Coloureds. Therefore, changes in the occupational structure for unskilled and semi-skilled manual employment was non-existent. The Apartheid period saw upward mobility of Africans into previously White dominated jobs restricted to specific occupational classes. Occupational categories of semi-professionals and routine white-collar work saw the most significant advancement of African men and women.

African men were increasingly employed in the skilled trades and front line supervisory jobs but not to the extent of the above-mentioned categories. The occupational categories of professionals and managers showed the smallest proportion of advancement for Africans. For the period concerned, Africans were relatively evenly distributed across most routine white-collar jobs but this was not matched in semi-professional and artisan employment. Crankshaw points out that for semi-professionals, Africans were concentrated in nursing

and teaching jobs, while the skilled trades saw this population group still concentrated in the building, furniture, jeweller and goldsmith sectors. He points out that although there was advancement, job and wage hierarchy within these occupational groups still existed for Africans. Crankshaw notes that during the Apartheid period, substantial African advancement was restricted to semi-professional and routine white-collar jobs while very little advancement occurred in managerial, professional and artisan jobs.

The evidence presented by Crankshaw should be interpreted on a macro level and he warns that the figures overstate the extent of erosion of inequality in this period. The important factor to be considered when looking at Crankshaw's evidence is the idea of the 'floating colour bar'. This concept proposes that Africans were moving into traditionally White jobs but more importantly these jobs were at the bottom level of the skill and income hierarchy. A case in point was African semi-professionals who were proportionately well represented in the semi-professional occupations but this was mainly a function of the high numbers of African schoolteachers and nurses. Added to this was the inequality in educational level of Black schoolteachers, which was lower than White schoolteachers meaning lower salaries for the former group.

Artisan employment showed a similar segregation within the skilled trades. This was manifested in limited African participation in technologically advanced trades (Electrical and Electronic, Metal and Engineering, Motor Vehicle and Printing) with high proportions of African artisans employed mainly in lower level positions (Jewellers & Goldsmiths, Furniture and building trades).

Crankshaw's study does, however, reveal that the routine white-collar category was significantly less polarised with respect to race. Africans formed a substantial portion of various common routine white-collar jobs in shops, offices and transport companies but front of house jobs (secretary, typist, receptionist, sales representative, data typist, computer operator) were still dominated by White employment. For this employment category, Africans

were predominant in the less skilled position of messenger. Crankshaw reveals racial hierarchy in statistics relating to income, which he states, shows that without exception for the period 1979 to 1989, African semi-professionals, routine white collar workers and artisans earned the least.

A further characteristic of employment opportunities for African workers during the Apartheid period was a distinction between rural migrants and Africans with urban rights. The mining and manufacturing sectors are examples of this where African employment was restricted to unskilled and lower paid levels of semi-skilled work that were attractive to poorly educated rural migrants (Crankshaw & Parnell, 2002). Apartheid government laws of the 1960's and 1970's drew deep divisions between urbanised and migrant Africans. Mobility opportunities for educated urban Africans increased with the reverse occurring for rural, uneducated African migrants due to the capital intensive preference of employers with regards to production (Crankshaw & Parnell, 2002). The late Apartheid period is thus characterised by the occupational differentiation of the urban African population with a distinct division between urban and rural Africans (Crankshaw & Parnell, 2002). Crankshaw and Parnell investigated employment opportunities for Africans in the Johannesburg region comparing people who arrived before 1980 to those who arrived after. Their findings suggest that more recent newcomers to the Johannesburg region were less successful in securing white-collar employment than established urban Africans. These findings bring into focus the effect that urbanisation and rural origins have on the occupational structure of South African society.

As noted earlier, Crankshaw provided evidence that advancement for Africans was uneven over the period 1965 to 1990 with certain occupational classes showing better permeability than others. A similar situation existed for Coloureds in this time period. Simkins and Hindson note that the 1970's showed substantial penetration by Coloureds (as well as Africans and Asians) into clerical, white-collar technical and non-manual jobs. With respect to artisan tasks Whites still predominated and to a lesser extent Coloured and

Asian workers.

Semi-skilled operative work also showed a degree of Coloured involvement. Within the building industry by the mid -1960's African and Coloured workers were commonly employed as machine operators. This was in large part due to the Industrial agreements of the 1950's, which allowed Africans and Coloureds to operate machinery. This saw to the growth of machine operative work for coloureds and by the mid -1980's all cranes were operated by either African or Coloured workers. The manufacturing industry saw similar opportunities for advancement in the machine operative occupations for Coloureds. For example mechanisation in the printing industry saw to the introduction of semi-skilled occupations such as Printer's Attendant to meet the shortage of skilled White printers. This position was filled predominantly by Coloureds and Indians. A shortage of White production moulders in the iron moulding trade saw to it that Coloured and African workers were employed in this occupation. By 1990, 65 per cent of production moulders were African, 17 per cent were coloured and only 16 per cent were white compared to 40 years earlier where almost all production moulders were White.

The Tertiary sector saw Coloured advancement within routine white-collar employment. As was the case with Africans, a shortage of White labour saw private sector companies begin to employ Coloureds in clerical and routine sales work in the 1970's. Crankshaw notes that although African men formed the bulk of routine white-collar employment, the proportion of Coloured and Indian men and women was very significant. Since white-collar jobs did not require educational qualifications above Matric (grade twelve) and in many cases standard eight (grade ten), educated blacks were able to fill the shortages of White labour for these occupations. Unlike African education, which was only really expanded into secondary education in the 1970's, Coloured education had been expanded into secondary schooling by the state in the 1960's. This meant that there was an educated pool of Coloureds and Indians from which the private sector could draw.

Within the semi-professional occupations, significant Coloured advancement is evident in the professions of nursing and teaching. With respect to nursing, the expansion of the health system during the Apartheid period to cater for an increasing urban black population created opportunities for Coloureds in nursing, as was the case for Africans. This saw the increase in Coloured nurses from 3,718 in 1965 to 13,163 in 1990 (based on Crankshaw's Manpower survey data analysis). The expansion of Coloured schooling mentioned above contributed considerably to the growth in employment figures for Coloured teachers from 8,263 in 1958 to 46,167 in 1989 (based on Crankshaw's Manpower survey data analysis). This expansion was so great that by the end of the 1980's the ratio of Indian and Coloured school teachers to White school teachers was double that of the early 1960's.

Crankshaw's study effectively ends at the start of the 1990's. In order to obtain a picture of the changes in the occupational structure for this decade it is necessary to examine other sources. The Project for Statistics on Living Standards and Development (PSLSD) survey was conducted in 1993 and collected details of occupation, employer and economic sector for household members, which can be used to assign approximate class positions to individuals (Seekings, 2003). There is however insufficient detail to reclassify occupational categories into those proposed by Crankshaw. In Seekings' analysis, he identifies broader class categories that can be used as reasonable proxies for a more finely tuned schema. These are as follows:

Upper class	- managers and professionals
Semi-professional class	- teachers and nurses
Intermediate class	- routine white collar, skilled and supervisory
Core working class	- semi-skilled and unskilled workers (except farm and domestic workers)
Marginal working class	- farm and domestic workers

For the PSLSD survey we find the following occupational class breakdown based on the study conducted by Seekings:

Upper class - 11%

Semi-professional - 7%

Intermediate - 29%

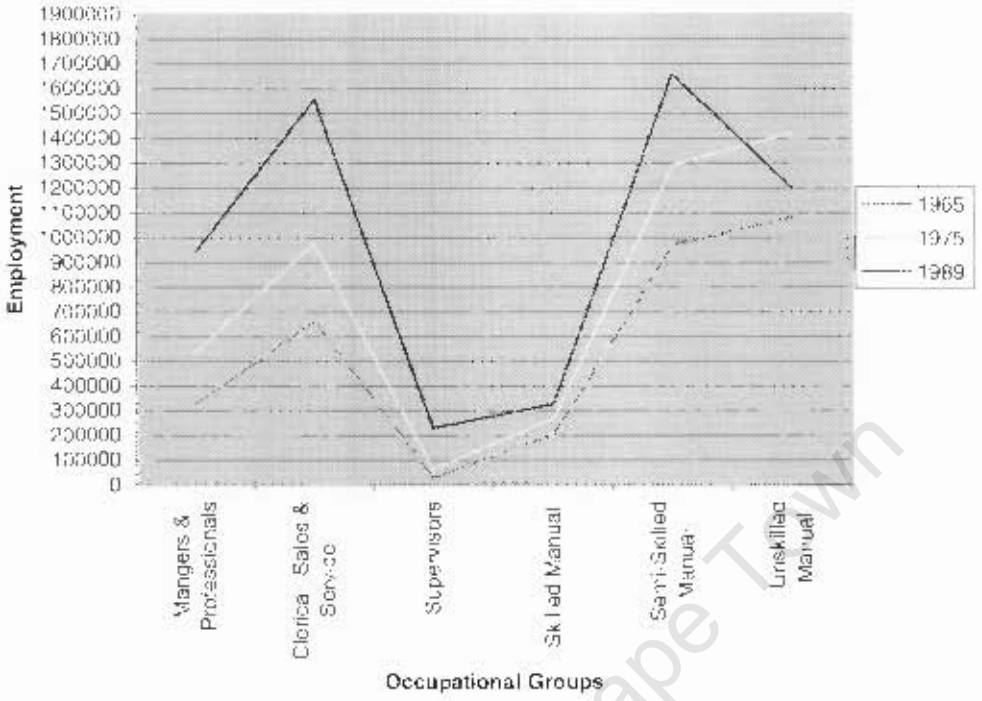
Core working - 31%

Marginal working - 21%

These categories although broad, provide a decent mark against which to compare the trend in changes in occupational structure identified from Crankshaw's study but unfortunately do not provide the racial breakdown of these changes. Seekings study is useful however because it identifies the effects the unemployed have on mapping aspects of class structure in South Africa. Seekings ' analysis is based on classifying households into occupational classes. As a result the manner in which he treats the unemployed is linked to household factors. Subsequently the unemployed are treated as either 1) members of households with mediated class locations according to the occupation of other household members or the source of income, or 2) as a residual category. This differs from Crankshaw's study in that the Manpower surveys did not directly include unemployed, rural or domestic workers. It does however raise the importance of the unemployed, which has to be considered within the context of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey. This will be examined in later chapters.

So what effect did all these changes have on the occupational structure of South African urban labour force specifically with reference to Blacks and Coloureds? This question is best answered by looking at a graphical representation of the changing occupational structure of the total workforce for all races and for Africans and Coloureds in terms of absolute figures for specific years during the period 1965 to 1989.

Figure 1. Occupational profile of the total workforce (all races) for the Manpower Surveys, 1965, 1975, & 1989

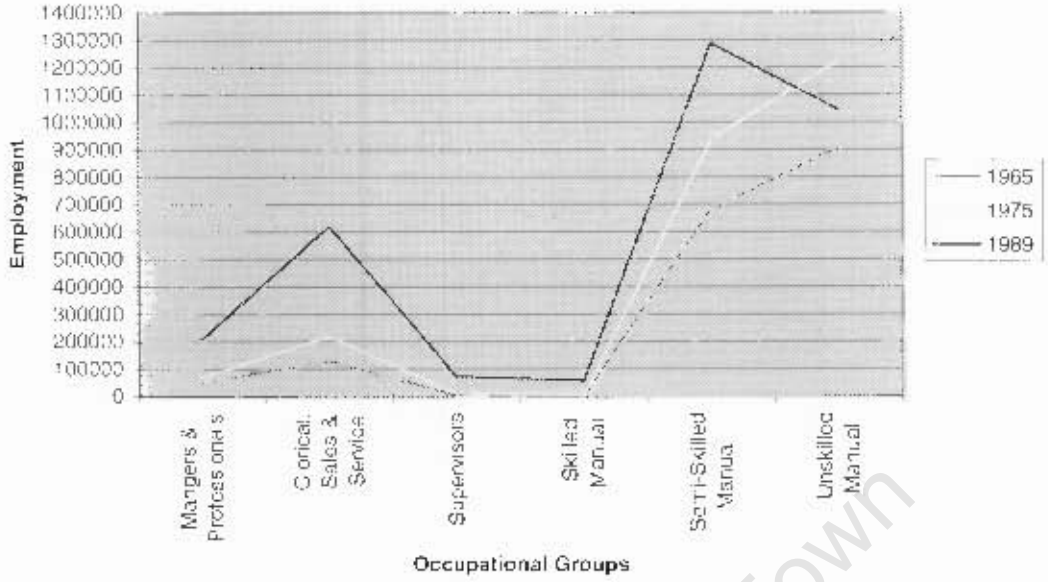


Source: My own analysis of Crankshaw's Manpower Survey Data Tables

Notes: Please note that Crankshaw's occupational groups have been combined to match the occupational groupings to be used in the analysis of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey to aid comparability and locating mobility shifts within structural shifts.

Figure one clearly shows the shift in the South African occupational structure from Unskilled and Semi-skilled Manual labour towards the non-manual occupations of Clerical, Sales and Service as well as Managerial and Professional positions. In absolute terms the demand for Unskilled Manual labour decreased significantly over the period 1975 to 1989, which is what Crankshaw identified. There is a trend towards an increase in absolute numbers for people employed in Semi-skilled Manual work with worker participation growing from just under 1 million in 1965 to over 1,600,000 in 1989. The Clerical, Sales and Service occupations show a dramatic increase with worker participation at about 650,000 in 1965 to over 1 and a half million in 1989. But what has the shifts been within the African and Coloured races?

Figure 2. Occupational profile of the African workforce for the Manpower Surveys, 1965, 1975, & 1989



Source: My own analysis of Crankshaw's Manpower Survey Data Tables

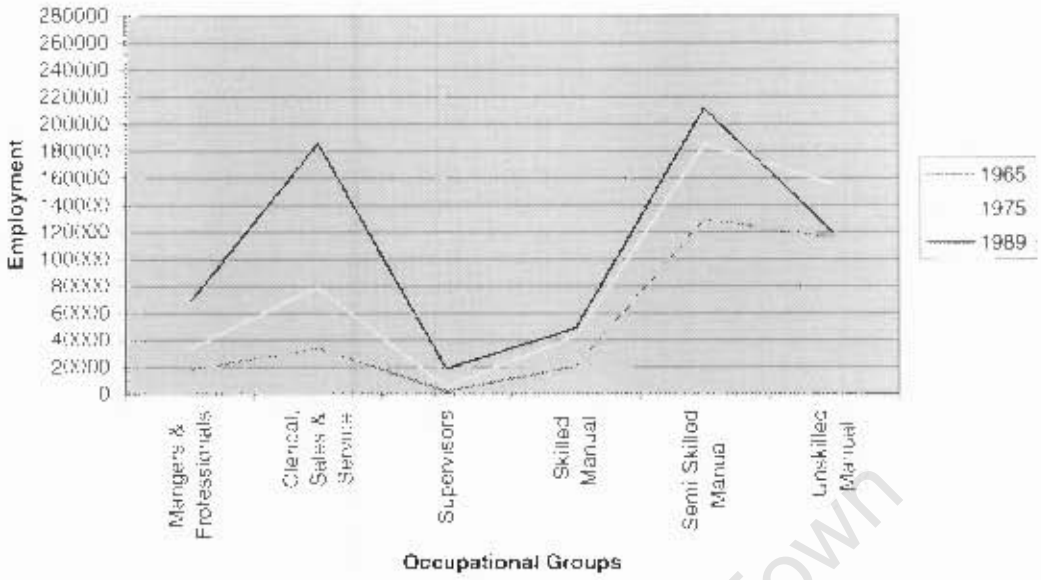
Notes: Please note that Crankshaw's occupational groups have been combined to match the occupational groupings to be used in the analysis of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey to aid comparability and locating mobility shifts within structural shifts.

Figure two illustrates clearly the shifts in the occupational structure of the African workforce over the Apartheid period. For the Managers and Professionals group there is a relatively small increase in African participation from under 100,000 in 1965 to just over 200,000 in 1989. This limited increase is in large part due to the increasing numbers of African nurses and teachers who are also captured in this occupational group.

The literature explained an increase of African workers in white-collar non-manual occupations to meet the shortage of white labour. This is observed in the upward trend regarding size of the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational group. In 1965 just over 100,000 Africans were employed as Clerical, Sales and Service workers. This grew to over 600,000 workers in 1989. The Skilled Manual occupational group shows a very small increase in African participation over the time period in question. As Crankshaw notes this is due to the fact that artisan work was fairly well protected for Whites by trade unions and the Apartheid government. Advances in technology urged

the private sector to opt for the fragmentation of the skilled trades to better utilise African labour, which resulted in more opportunities for Africans in the Semi-skilled Manual occupational group particularly in machine operative work. By 1989 Semi-skilled Manual occupations for Africans had increased to just under 1,300,000 from just under 700,000 for 1965 reflecting the increase in machine operative work identified by Crankshaw. Figure two illustrates the absolute decline in the numbers for African unskilled manual labour, which Crankshaw noted due to the absolute decrease in demand for this type of labour.

Figure 3. Occupational profile of the Coloured workforce for the Manpower Surveys, 1965, 1975, & 1989



Source: My own analysis of Crankshaw's Manpower Survey Data Tables

Notes: Please note that Crankshaw's occupational groups have been combined to match the occupational groupings to be used in the analysis of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey to aid comparability and locating mobility shifts within structural shifts.

As was noted with Africans, there is a slight increase in Coloured participation in Managerial and Professional occupations but as before this can be attributed to the increase in numbers of Coloured teachers and nurses as noted in the review of Crankshaw's Manpower study above. Figure three does illustrate the increase in Coloured participation in white-collar non-manual occupations as can be seen in the rising Clerical, Sales and Service figures from just under 40,000 in 1965 to just over 180,000 in 1989. As with Africans, skilled manual occupations show a very small increase. Semi-skilled manual occupations show large numbers of Coloured workers, which is a reflection of Crankshaw's findings with regards to the levels of Coloured participation in machine operative work in the manufacturing industry. Unskilled manual labour for Coloureds shows a declining trend, which is once again indicative of the decrease in demand for this type of labour due to mechanisation of various labour intensive tasks.

Overall figure two shows the shift in the structure of the African occupational profile from unskilled manual labour towards semi-skilled manual labour and to a lesser extent white-collar non-manual occupations with limited participation in managerial and professional positions. Figure three shows a similar shift in the Coloured occupational profile but the emphasis being more on white-collar non-manual occupations. Human and Hofmeyer (1985) have also made the observation that Africans remain under-represented in professional and managerial positions while for Coloureds, Indians and Africans the greatest amount of movement has taken place amongst females moving up into clerical and sales positions. These general trends will be useful in locating mobility patterns within the African and Coloured population groups and reveals that a combined mobility analysis of the two groups is possible as their overall shifts follow similar patterns (that is the shift form unskilled manual to semi-skilled manual and white-collar non-manual occupations).

4. Area of Study – The Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District

This chapter will give a brief description and history of the area under examination. The aim is to provide details of the socio-economic status of the area as well as descriptive attributes that will aid later analysis and interpretation of the results. Figure 4 below shows the Magisterial District boundaries for the Cape Peninsula. The area shaded grey is the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, which is the focus of the study concerned.

Figure 4. Map of the Cape Peninsula outlining Magisterial Districts

Source: Statistics South Africa SuperTab Census 1996

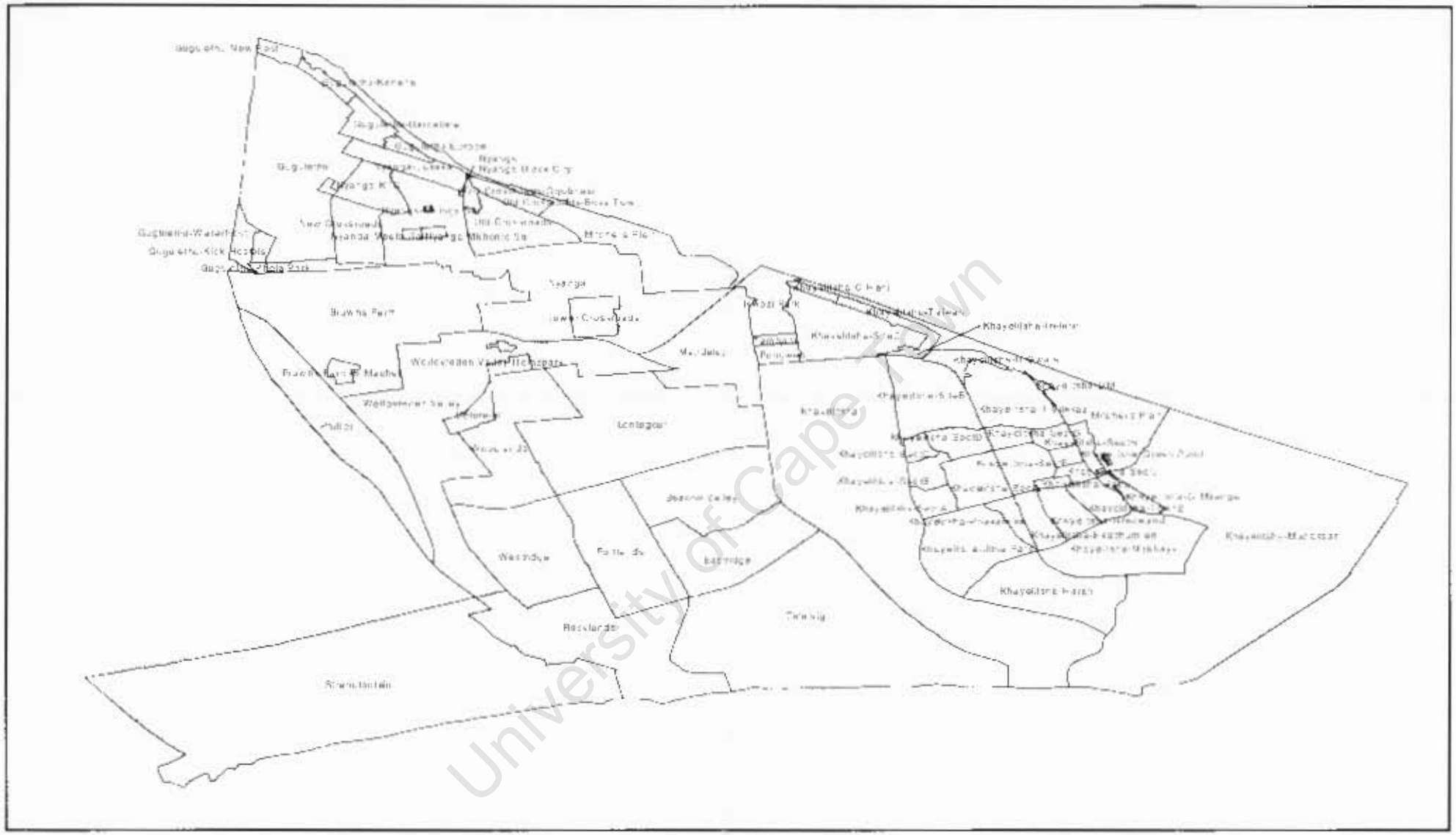


Figure 5. Townships in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District *(Source: Statistics South Africa SuperTab Census 1996)*

Figure 5 above outlines the townships that are contained in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. The Cape Town area as a whole is predominantly Coloured and is home to almost 40 per cent of South Africa's so called Coloured people (Cook, 1991). There is a rapidly increasing number of Africans in the area due to the abolition of influx controls and the Group Areas Act legislation at the end of the Apartheid era.

Influx controls and Coloured labour preference policy implemented after 1954 meant that the job market for Africans in Cape Town was rather precarious and limited to unskilled manual jobs. Africans were allowed to work in certain businesses until sufficient Coloured labour was available (Cook, 1991). The control of access to family housing was also very strict with Africans as well as Coloureds being relocated into townships or in the case of some Africans being removed from the city and sent to 'Bantustans'. By the end of the 1960's an estimated 150,000 people were relocated to new public housing estates or 'townships' built on the Cape Flats (Wilkinson, 2000). Within the city itself construction of houses did occur for Africans and Coloureds. The African townships of Langa, Guguletu and Nyanga started in the 1950's but once Guguletu was completed no further housing for Africans was built until the 1980's. For Coloureds the zoning of land as White residential areas in the Southern Suburbs meant that Coloured people were forced East onto the Cape Flats. In 1974 the largest single development for Coloured housing began with the construction of the townships of Mitchell's Plain. Cook explains that improvement of road links and completion of the railway has reinforced the dormitory status of Mitchell's Plain townships.

For Africans the construction of alternative residential housing in the city began in 1983 with the decision to build Khayelitsha. The demand for housing amongst Africans far outstripped the supply and the result has been the proliferation of informal settlements and backyard shacks in the townships of Khayelitsha. To get an overall picture of the different types of housing occupied by Coloureds and Africans in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, it is best to investigate results from Census 2001 with regards to housing type distribution. Table 1.1 below gives a breakdown of the types of houses

occupied by residents in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. It must be remembered that much of the public housing provided in the Cape Flats townships would be regarded as extremely overcrowded by international standards (Wilkinson, 2000).

Table 1.1. Frequency distribution of Dwelling type for the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District (Census 2001)

Dwelling Type	Total	Percent
House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard	96,016	49.71
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials	3,451	1.79
Flat in block of flats	9,053	4.69
Town/cluster/semi=detached house (simplex; duplex; triplex)	17,502	9.06
House/flat/room in back yard	3,763	1.95
Informal dwelling/shack in back yard	11,401	5.90
Informal dwelling/shack NOT in back yard	46,094	23.86
Room/flatlet not in back yard but on shared property	1,448	0.75
Caravan or tent	604	0.31
Private ship/boat	45	0.02
Not applicable (living quarters is not housing unit)	3,784	1.96
Total	**193,159**	**100**

Source: Statistics South Africa Census 2001 Data

From table 1.1 we can see that almost 50 per cent of all housing in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District is of the stand-alone brick type. Looking at all formal forms of housing we can further conclude that two thirds of all housing stock in the area is formal in nature (that is, brick dwellings be it in the form of a free standing house (49.71 per cent), flat in a block of flats (4.69 per cent), town/cluster/semi-detached house (9.06), house/flat/room in backyard (1.95 per cent) and room/flatlet not in back yard but on shared property (0.75 per cent)). The striking figure to consider though is that almost 30 per cent of dwellings in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District are informal in nature. This gives us a clear indication of the socio-economic status of the area. The frequency of this dwelling type points to a working class population with possible informal sector involvement.

Table 1.2 below gives the employment status breakdown for the area. Almost twenty eight per cent of adults aged 18 to 65 years in the area are unemployed. This high figure points to the lack of job opportunities for persons living in the area and is congruent with South Africa's generally high unemployment rate of 31 per cent (South African Labour Force Survey Statistical Release, 2003a).

From the above data it becomes clear that the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District is a predominantly working class area. This means that the study of intergenerational mobility for this area would be skewed in that respondents who have possibly experienced upward occupational class mobility would have most likely moved out of the area. These are a few of the factors that have been considered while conducting the analysis of intergenerational occupational mobility in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District.

Table 1.2. Frequency distribution of Employment Status for the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District (Census 2001)

Employment Status	Total	Percent
Employed	213,881	38.88
Unemployed	152,903	27.80
Scholar or student	75,704	13.76
Home-maker or housewife	34,617	6.29
Pensioner or retired person/to old to work	15,853	2.88
Unable to work due to illness or disability	16,100	2.93
Seasonal worker not working presently	3,151	0.57
Does not choose to work	9,926	1.80
Could not find work	27,912	5.07
Total	**550,047**	**100.0**

Source: Statistics South Africa Census 2001 Data

This section has provided a brief overview of the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District and is by no means exhaustive. The aim is to provide the reader with some general background characteristics to help locate the study of mobility within the actual area concerned. Having said this, it would now seem

appropriate to explore and detail the methodology used to study intergenerational occupational class mobility in the area concerned and outline some of the problems experienced in this regard.

5. Research Methodology

This chapter provides the technical details regarding the research methodology used in this report. This is to ensure that any further research to be conducted within the scope of intergenerational mobility amongst the South African population is comparable to the current research topic and that data used in this research report is accessible and useful to other researchers.

The starting point for any analysis looking to examine intergenerational mobility from a quantitative point of view requires a data set that captures details regarding the current occupational characteristics of respondents and their household head, father or parent's occupation while they were growing up. This information is necessary to aid in the occupational class classification of respondents and their parents, which serves as a starting point from which intergenerational movements can be tracked. The main tools for this analysis are occupational mobility tables which cross-classifies persons according to the above-mentioned occupational classes at two points in time. This research project has looked at the occupational mobility of respondents from their parent's occupation to the respondent's current occupation and these constitute the two points in time, which form the cross-classification axis of the mobility tables.

The data set to be used has to collect the relevant information in a format that will allow for the cross classification of parent's occupation to the respondent's current occupation. The following sections defines terms used specifically within the field of intergenerational occupational mobility relating to mobility tables and illustrates the methods and procedures used to classify respondents and their parents into occupational class categories as well as providing the relevant information pertaining to the data set used.

5.1. The Mechanics of Mobility Tables

Occupational mobility tables cross-classify persons according to their occupations at two points in time (that is the subjects first job compared to his/her current job, also referred to as intragenerational mobility) (Hout, 1983). This differs from intergenerational mobility, which cross-classifies a subject's parent's occupation to the subject's first or current occupation (that is a comparison of occupations across two generations). In both cases the earlier point in time is referred to as the origin and the latter as the destination.

In examining intergenerational mobility, the most common origin variable is the occupation of the subject's father while the person was growing up. In this research project, the decision was taken to use the subject's parent's occupation while growing up as the origin variable. In the situation where both the father and mother of the subject were occupied, the higher occupational classification of the two (based on socio-economic status referring to education as well as manual versus non-manual occupations) was used and assigned as the class origin of the subject. The reason for this is that the study has been aimed at examining the mobility of individuals specifically from their parents' occupational class to their current occupational class. The reason why household head was not used as the origin variable is because I am only interested in examining generational change in occupations and not the effect that household head class positions have had on respondents.

5.2. Inflow and Outflow Percentages

Within the mobility table the same categories are used for origin and destination variables and these are arranged in the same order (Hout, 1983). This is usually in the order from non-manual-skilled occupations to manual unskilled occupations. In other words the occupational classes are ranked to determine whether movement from an occupational origin to an occupational destination entails upward or downward or immobility (Blau & Duncan, 1967). The cells of the table give the counts of persons that share each combination

of origin and destination (Hout, 1983). Hout explains this relationship using the following formula:

Let *i* index the rows and *j* the columns; *fij* is the number of persons with origin *i* and destination *j*. When *i* and *j* are the same, origin and destination are the same. Within the table $i = j$ forms the main diagonal and cases who fall in this diagonal are immobile (Hout, 1983).

The starting point for analysis within the mobility table is the calculation of percentage distributions within rows or columns. Row percentages are referred to as outflow percentages and record the distribution of destinations for each category. The image used to explain this is of labour flowing out of the given origin occupation. Column percentages are referred to as inflow percentages and record the distribution of origins for each destination. This can be viewed as an image of labour flowing into the given destination occupations.

5.3. Relative Mobility

The methods described thus far for analysing mobility tables rely on 'absolute proportions' (Erikson & Goldthorpe, 1993: 55) and are useful tools in providing a descriptive picture of the flow of labour. This is useful within the context of the research topic because questions of where occupational classes have originated from and where labour is flowing to can be answered. But it is the 'relative' and not 'absolute' (Erikson & Goldthorpe, 1993: 55) proportion of respondents with the same origin who end up in a particular destination that indicates the influence of social origins on occupational destinations (Blau & Duncan, 1967 and Schneier, 1983). By using relative mobility calculations it is possible to avoid the problem where categories are of different sizes.

Because one examines the proportion of respondents with the same origins who end up in a particular destination with respect to relative mobility, the outflow (row percentages) mobility table serves as the starting point. The last row in this particular table, which represents the percentage distribution of the total sample in several occupational classes, serves as the standard against

which all percentages in the matrix of the table are compared (Blau & Duncan, 1967). This calculation is termed the 'index of association' or 'social distance mobility ratio'. It is calculated by dividing each value in the matrix by the corresponding figure in the total row at the bottom of its column. In this way an index of the influence of occupational origins on occupational destinations is obtained (Blau & Duncan, 1967).

Perfect or random mobility would exist where the respondent's occupation is independent of the respective household head's (in this case parent's) occupation and thus the index of association described above would equal 1.0 (Blau & Duncan, 1967). For this situation to exist the distribution of origins in each destination group has the same distribution of origins as the total population and each origin group has the same distribution of destinations as the total population (Blau & Duncan, 1967 and Schneier, 1983).

This can be explained by creating an imaginary population where the sample size is 100 respondents who have four origin and four destination occupational categories. Taking into consideration the conditions described above, this population would have the following frequency distributions:

Table 2.1. Frequency distribution of hypothetical population

Origins	Destinations				
	1	2	3	4	TOTAL
1	1	2	3	4	**10**
2	2	4	6	8	**20**
3	3	6	9	12	**30**
4	4	8	12	16	**40**
TOTAL	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**100**

BOX A

Column % distribution for each column

10%
20%
30%

The table above shows that each destination category has a distribution of origins of the same proportion as the distribution of origins in the total population (that is the columns all have a percentage distribution equal to the distribution shown in Box A above). The row percentages for the distribution are as follows:

Table 2.2. Outflow percentages for hypothetical population

Origins	Destinations				
	1	2	3	4	TOTAL
1	10	20	30	40	**100**
2	10	20	30	40	**100**
3	10	20	30	40	**100**
4	10	20	30	40	**100**
TOTAL	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**100**

BOX B

Index of association calculation:
Red Circle divided by blue circle = 1.0
This is repeated for each cell and its respective total row percentage at the bottom of each column.

This means that the distribution above meets the criteria for perfect mobility and if the calculations for the indices of association are completed, the following results are achieved:

Table 2.3. Index of association calculations for hypothetical population

Origins	Destinations			
	1	2	3	4
1	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
2	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
3	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
4	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

For the above hypothetical population group it does not matter what origin a respondent had because there is no strong occupational inheritance. In other words you have as much chance of ending up in any other occupational category as your origin category. This is a state of perfect mobility. Put differently perfect mobility is the situation where the correlation between a person's income, occupational status or education and his or her starting point (defined as the occupation or income of the person's parents) is zero (Hout, 2003). In reality this is not the case and the extent to which the observed mobility ratios (that is the indices of association calculated as described above) diverge from perfect mobility indicates the extent to which the occupation of origin (parent's occupation) influences the respondent's occupation (Blau & Duncan, 1967 and Schneier, 1983).

Having laid out some of the tools to be used in the analysis of mobility tables, the data set and its variables need to be discussed. The following section provides a description of the data set used as well as how the data was cleaned to meet the requirements of the analysis tools.

5.4. Data: The Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain (KMP) survey 2000.

The data set used in this project was the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain survey of the year 2000 conducted by the Centre for Social Science Research (CSSR) of the University of Cape Town in collaboration with the University of Michigan (USA). This survey was designed with a special focus on labour market issues and as a precursor to a Cape Area Panel Study, which was to be conducted in the year 2002 (KMP 2000 Baseline Report, 2003). The Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District was chosen as the sampling frame for the survey because of data gathered from the 1996 census, which revealed that this district contained almost thirty per cent of the population in the Cape Metropolitan Council area. This area also straddled the two cities of Cape Town and Tygerberg and housed nearly 74% of the African and over 20% of the Coloured metropolitan population. Census data revealed that the area in question showed unemployment rates of over 44 per cent for Africans and over 20 per cent for Coloureds (KMP 2000 Baseline Report, 2003). This survey was particularly useful for the purposes of this project because it collected individual level data for respondents regarding education, employment and intergenerational mobility amongst other topics. The intergenerational mobility section in particular met the requirements of collecting information regarding respondents' parents' occupations as well as educational characteristics.

5.4.1. Sampling

The sample was designed to represent all adults (that is 18 years and older) in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. This entailed using a two-stage cluster sample in which the first stage involved the selection of clusters of households and the second stage the selection of the households themselves. All adult members of the household were interviewed (Crankshaw, Welch & Butcher, 2001). The enumerator areas within the magisterial district were those used for the population census of 1996 as defined by Statistics South Africa. These are homogenous with respect to

housing type and size (Statistics South Africa, 2001). It was the intention of the sample designers to administer 2,875 questionnaires and with an average number of adults per household in the area equalling 2.66 (as indicated by Census 1996), it was calculated that 1,081 households would need to be selected. The researchers aimed to interview at least ten households from each selected enumerator area meaning that 108 enumerator areas were selected to reach the target of 1,081 households. In the second stage of the cluster sampling procedure, 13 households were selected within each enumerator area. This was to ensure that at least 10 households in every enumerator area would be interviewed based on previous survey results showing a response rate of 80 per cent. The households were selected using the systematic sampling method with a random start (Crankshaw, Welch & Butcher, 2001). The end result was a total of 2,644 adults interviewed within the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District.

5.4.2. Data Format

The Centre for Social Science Research released the KMP survey in the form of a data set formatted in the statistical analysis programme known as STATA[9]. This data set contains the actual raw data of the survey and makes it available to researchers to perform their own analysis using the figures collected. The data set is divided into four parts. These are the Household Module, the Adult Module and two additional modules, which have been produced by researchers who have worked with the KMP survey data. The additional modules are the Adult Derived Gross Income and the Labour Force Categories (with reference to employment status). For the purposes of this research project the main module used was the Adult module as it contains all

[9] Stata is an environment for manipulating and analysing data using statistical and graphical methods. Stata is an integrated package — not a collection of separate modules. You can intersperse data management, statistical, and graphical commands. **Stata Corporation** develops and distributes Stata, software for statistical analysis (www.stata.com).

the relevant data with respect to respondents' and their parents' occupations as well as general demographics such as age, gender, migration and educational achievements.

5.5. Restructuring the Data

Initial analysis of the data with respect to the available variables revealed that the data needed to be cleaned and recoded to fit the research question. The following section provides the details of the variables that were recoded. This process has been documented in great detail because of the difficulty experienced in extracting the necessary data in the correct format for research purposes and will hopefully aid future researchers using the KMP survey data.

5.5.1. Recoding the Respondents' Occupational Variables

The central theme of the research topic is that of intergenerational occupational mobility. Therefore variables pertaining to the occupational class of respondents had to be identified. Before this step could be undertaken, the broad occupational classes to be used had to be identified. The occupational classification system of Erikson and Goldthorpe was used as authors Crankshaw (1997) and Seekings (2003) has proven its usefulness in examining occupational class within the South African context. This occupational class classification served as the initial starting point for identifying occupational categories. The KMP data set, with its limitations, had to be considered and hence the following class categories were produced based on the theories of the abovementioned authors as well as the practicality of the South African Standard Classification of Occupations Codes list (SASCO).

- Legislators, senior officials and managers
- Professionals
- Technicians and associate professionals
- Clerks
- Service workers and shop and market sales workers
- Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
- Craft and related trades workers
- Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
- Elementary occupations
- Small Vendors

The last category on the list, namely Small Vendors, has been created to accommodate self-employed respondents who are effectively street vendors selling items to the public on a very small scale. On closer inspection it was found that this group of respondents could effectively be placed into elementary occupations. The respondents' parents' generation did not have sufficient numbers for this occupational group to be used in the cross tabulation required by mobility tables. The aforementioned occupational classification list has been reorganised to form groupings of occupational classes based on the three level hierarchy of Erikson and Goldthorpe (1993) as discussed in the literature review. I have increased the three level hierarchy classification system of Erikson and Goldthorpe to five based on the nature of the data set used and the groupings of similar occupations which in the South African context creates groups that are socio-economically different from each other but are relatively internally socio-economically homogenous. The categories of Skilled agricultural and fishery workers and Craft and related trades workers have been grouped into one category because of the relative small size of the former category. My occupational class hierarchy is thus as follows:

- **Managers and Professionals** – Consisting of Legislators, senior officials and managers, Professionals and Technicians and associate professionals
- **Clerks, Sales and Service workers** – Consisting of Clerks, Service workers and shop and market sales workers
- **Skilled Manual occupations** – Consisting of Skilled agricultural and fishery workers and Craft and related trades workers
- **Semi-skilled Manual occupations** – Consisting of Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
- **Unskilled Manual occupations** – Consisting of Elementary occupations and Small Vendors

The problem with the data set was that there was no single variable for occupational class that would capture the occupation of the employed, self-employed and casual worker. A number of variables had to be examined to create this new variable. The KMP survey had a number of questions that dealt with the occupation of respondents. For the purposes of this research project, not all of these questions were required. The questionnaire captured details of the respondents' wage employment, self-employment and casual employment. The data set has been structured following the questionnaire (refer to appendix 1) structure with additional variables added which were post coded. These new variables have aided in recoding the corresponding occupational variables to create a single variable, which captures the respondents' main occupations. The questions and variables that did prove most useful in identifying occupational classes as well as provide the relevant selection criteria for the analysis were as follows:

Wage Employment Section E

Question E.1/variable e1. Are you currently in wage employment?
Question E.2/variable e2. Do you have more than one wage job?
Question E.6/variable e6. What kind of work do you do in this job? (Main job)
Variable soce6. Recode of variable e6 reclassifying respondents' answers into the Standard Occupational Codes used by Statistics South Africa.

Using these questions and variables I was able to create a new variable labelled ResWageOcc (Respondent's Wage Employment), which captured the wage employment of respondents and recoded these occupations according to the SASCO. The next step of the process was to create a new variable that captured the occupations of the self-employed. The idea was to create a mutually exclusive situation where each respondent would only be assigned one occupation that would serve as defining the occupational class of that respondent. This was done by assigning the respondent's wage occupation as the main occupation. If the respondent did not have a wage job, then the next main occupation would be that of self-employment.

The variables that proved most useful in creating this new variable were as follows:

Self-Employment Section G

Question G.1/variable g1. Have you engaged in any non-wage income earning activities in during the past six months?

Question G.2/variable g2. Describe your main non-wage income earning activity.

Variable g2recode. A recode of variable g2 into collapsed categories based on question G.2. These categories were later recoded by myself to fall in line with the SASCO codes list.

Variable g2items

Variable g2services

Variable g2other

I created a new variable labelled ResSelfOcc (respondent's Self-employed occupation) (refer to appendix 1.1). Respondents who fell into this variable had to have answered no to the question "Are you currently in wage employment?" and had to have provided details of their self-employment. The next step was to create a new variable that captured the casual employment occupations of respondents. As with the previous two new variables this variable had to be mutually exclusive so respondents had to have answered no to both the questions "Are you currently in wage employment?" and "Have you engaged in any non-wage income earning activities during the past six months?" The variables and questions that were most useful in creating this

new variable were as follows:

Casual Employment Section I

Question I.6/variable i6. What was your main form of casual work during the past six months?

Variable i6other.

Using these variables I created a new variable labelled ResCasOcc (respondent's casual occupation) (refer to appendix 1.1). Respondents captured in this variable could not have wage employment or be self-employed.

The final step in creating a single variable which captured the occupation of respondents was to combine the above three variables into one. The resultant new variable created was ResOccCat (respondent's occupational categories) (refer to appendix 1.1). This produced the following frequency distribution regarding the occupation of respondents:

Table 3.1. Frequency distribution of Respondents' occupations KMP survey

Respondents' occupational categories	Frequency	Percent	Cum.%
Legislators, senior officials & managers	28	1.98	1.98
Professionals	42	2.97	4.94
Technicians and associate professionals	52	3.67	8.62
Clerks	110	7.77	16.38
Service Workers & Shop & market sales workers	189	13.35	29.73
Skilled Agricultural & Fishery Workers, Craft & Related Trades Workers	154	10.88	40.61
Plant & Machinery Operators & Assemblers	121	8.55	49.15
Elementary Occupations	635	44.85	94
No occupational data	85	6	100
Total	**1,416**	**100**	

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

Since intergenerational mobility involves the cross-tabulation of parents' occupations and respondents' occupations, the next phase of recoding would be to determine the occupations of the parents' of the respondents who have been assigned occupational classes above. By default if a respondent has not been assigned an occupational class category, then he/she would be excluded from the data set. Thus the 85 observations falling into the No Occupational Data category above have been excluded reducing the total to 1,331.

5.5.2. Recoding the Parents' Occupational Variables

This section like the previous will outline how a single variable was created which captures the occupational class of the respondents' parents' taking into account the higher occupational class status of the two parents if both were employed. The creation of this variable has been the most complex part of the research process. The variable that was created had to be identical in occupational class classification to the categories created for the respondents' occupations. The occupational classification list outlined above has therefore been used in the recoding of this new variable. The questions relevant to the creation of this variable are to be found in section C of the KMP survey questionnaire in the section entitled Intergenerational Mobility.

The biggest problem with this section of the questionnaire is that the identification of respondents' parents and their corresponding occupational classifications are scattered across 22 questions (in effect 22 variables) as well as an additional 20 variables that were post coded after data collection. The questionnaire went about capturing details of the respondents' parents in sections covering the household head (defined as the head of the household where the respondent spent most of their childhood or where they lived when they were 14 years old), the spouse of the household head, the father of the respondent (who was not the household head or spouse of the household head) and the mother of the respondent (who was not the household head or spouse of the household head). The approach I have taken is to cover each section mentioned above with respect to the respondents' parents. Within each section four types of employment are identified, these are regular wage employment, self-employment, casual wage employment and the previous occupation of the unemployed or retired. The following sections detail the recoding process used to provide occupational class classification for the parents of respondents in the KMP survey.

5.5.3. Recoding of the Household Head's Occupations

The questions C.4 to C.8 (refer to appendix 1) were used to create the single variable, which would capture the main occupation of the household head. As was done in the section covering respondents' occupations, the variables covering the regular wage, self-employment, casual wage and previous occupation of the retired or unemployed household head had to be mutually exclusive. The same hierarchy of employment has been applied with the addition of the previous occupation of the retired or unemployed household head. This addition has not meant any change in the hierarchy of selection because by default if a person is retired or unemployed, they would not be involved in either regular wage, casual or self-employment.

For the head of household I created four new variables, which captured the respective regular wage employment, self-employment, casual wage employment and the previous occupation of the retired or unemployed (refer to appendices 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5). The names of these variables were HhhRegWag (Household head's regular wage employment), HhhSelfOcc (Household head's self-employed occupation), HhhCasOcc (household head's casual occupation) and HhhPrevOcc (Household head's previous occupation if retired or unemployed).

HhhRegWag

The questions and variables used to create this new variable were as follows:
Question C.5/variable c5. For most of your childhood what did the head of household do?
Question C6.1/variable c6_1soc & variable c6_1. If the head of household was in regular wage employment what kind of work did he/she usually do?
The variable c6_1soc was recoded creating a new variable called HhhRegWag (refer to appendix 1.2) to meet the occupational classifications list that was outlined above. This was fairly simple as the variable c6_1soc was post coded to meet the SASCO system.

HhhSelfOcc

The questions and variables used to create this new variable were as follows:
Question C.5/variable c5. For most of your childhood what did the head of household do?
Question C.8/variable c8 and variable c8other. If the head of household was self-employed, what kind of self-employment was it?
Unlike the variables for HhhRegWag, the variables used to create the new variable HhhSelfOcc were not coded to the SASCO system. I recoded this variable as well as examining the raw data collected by the c8other variable and had to individually recode these observations to meet the SASCO system (refer to appendix 1.3).

HhhCasOcc

The questions and variables used to create this new variable were as follows:
Question C.5/variable c5. For most of your childhood what did the head of household do?
Question C6.2/variable c6_2soc & variable c6_2. If the head of household was a casual worker, what kind of work did he/she usually do?
Variable c6_2soc was post coded and contained the relevant occupational data for household heads that had casual employment. The codes were set to the SASCO system and were thus easy to convert to my occupational classification system (refer to appendix 1.4).

HhhPrevOcc

The questions and variables used to create this new variable were as follows:
Question C.5/variable c5. For most of your childhood what did the head of household do?
Question C7/variable c7soc & variable c7. If the head of household was unemployed or retired, but had been employed previously in wage employment, what kind of work did he/she do?
The variable c7soc was post coded to meet the SASCO system thus recoding to create this new variable was simple apart from four observations that were

recoded by myself using the raw data from variable c7 (refer to appendix 1.5). The final step in this process was to combine the four new variables that captured the occupations of the household head of respondents but at the same time took into account only those household heads that were parents of the respondents. I created a new variable labelled HhhOccCat (Household head occupational categories), which only picked out the occupations of household heads who were either the father or mother of the respondent (refer to appendix 1.6). This was achieved by using question C.4 "What was your relationship to the head of household at the time?" (Refer to appendix 1). Tabulating this new variable produces the following results:

Table 3.2. Frequency distribution of occupations of Household heads who were parents of respondents - KMP survey

Household heads' occupational categories	Frequency	Percent	Cum.%
Legislators, senior officials & managers	29	1.40	1.40
Professionals	41	1.98	3.38
Technicians and associate professionals	18	0.87	4.25
Clerks	36	1.74	5.99
Service Workers & Shop & market sales workers	152	7.35	13.34
Skilled Agricultural & Fishery Workers, Craft & Related Trades Workers	388	18.75	32.10
Plant & Machinery Operators & Assemblers	173	8.36	40.46
Elementary Occupations	537	25.95	66.41
No occupational data	695	33.59	100
Total	**2,069**	**100**	

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

Those household heads who were parents of respondents but did not have

any occupational data would be excluded hence the figure to work with would be 1,374.

5.5.4. Recoding of the spouse of the household head

The procedure followed to recode the spouse of the household head was exactly the same as that used to recode the household heads' occupations. As was the case with the household heads, the end result was the creation of a new single variable named HhhSpouseOccCat (created from four new variables, HhhSpouseRegWag – Household head spouse regular wage, HhhSpouseSelfOcc – Household head spouse self-employed occupation, HhhSpouseCasOcc – Household head spouse casual occupation and HhhSpousePrevOcc – Household head spouse previous occupation if retired or unemployed, refer to appendices 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 1.10) that captured the occupations of the spouses of the household heads. The difference however is that when the abovementioned four new variables were combined to create this single variable the coding was restricted to spouses of household heads who were either fathers of respondents and the husband of the household head or mothers of respondents and the wife of the household head (refer to appendix 1.11). This measure was taken to ensure that only the parent's of respondents were captured by these new occupational classification variables.

5.5.5. Recoding fathers and mothers who were not household heads or spouses of household heads

For both fathers and mothers of respondents who were not household heads or the spouses of household heads, five new variables were created for each. These variables were along the same lines as before, namely regular wage, self-employment, casual occupation and previous occupation if retired or unemployed. The fifth variable in each case was that of the combination of the four variables mentioned above to capture the occupations of the parents of respondents (refer to appendices 1.12 and 1.13).

The problem associated with this section of the questionnaire is that there was room for error in the data collecting process. It was possible for respondents to supply information about their parents in the questions about the household head and the spouse of the household head as well as in the section about their fathers and mothers even though they were not supposed to. The selection criteria thus had to exclude those respondents who had supplied information about their parents in the household head and spouse section and only look at coding the respondents who had not provided details about their parents in any other part of the intergenerational mobility section but that of the father and mother section.

For fathers who were not household heads or the spouses of household heads the selection criteria logic was as follows: Respondents who answered that the head of household was their father had to be excluded. Respondents who answered that the spouse of the head of household was their father also had to be excluded.

For mothers who were not household heads or the spouses of household heads the selection criteria logic was as follows:
Respondents who answered that the head of household was their mother had to be excluded. Respondents who answered that the spouse of the head of household was their mother also had to be excluded.

5.5.6. Combining the variables created for household heads, spouses of household heads and parents who were neither household heads or spouses of household heads

The next step in the process of creating a single variable that captured the occupations of the parents of respondents was to combine all the variables created thus far under the various headings of household head, spouse of household head and parents who were neither household heads or the spouses of household heads. It must be remembered that the above-mentioned sections only captured the occupational details of either fathers or mothers of respondents. The key problem now is to select the occupations,

which have a higher socio-economic index, based on the hierarchy of occupations established in the literature review.

To do this I had to first combine household heads that were parents' occupations with the spouses of household heads that were parents' occupations. In addition to this I had to compare the two occupational classifications and take the higher of the two. In other words if the household head who was the father of a respondent had an occupational classification of Professional but the spouse of the household head who was the mother of that same respondent had an occupational classification of Legislator, senior official or manager, then the mother's occupation would be chosen over the father's occupation (based on the hierarchy of occupations defined above). The end result was a single variable labelled HhhParOccCat (Household head or spouse of household head who are parents of respondents occupational categories) (refer to appendix 1.14).

The next step was to do the same procedure for the fathers and mothers of respondents who were neither household heads or the spouses of household heads. I created a new variable labelled ParOccCat (parents of respondents who were not household heads or the spouses of household heads) (refer to appendix 1.15). As was the situation with HhhOccCat this variable took into account which occupational classification of the father or mother was higher based on the hierarchical occupational list defined above. The important aspect of this variable generation was to ensure that interviewer error was omitted through the same procedure described in the section *Recoding fathers and mothers who were not household heads or spouses of household heads.*

The final step in this process was the creation of a new variable labelled ParentOcc (parents of respondents occupational categories). This variable is the combination of the variables created under household heads that were parents of respondents, spouses of household heads who were parents of respondents and parents of respondents who were neither household heads or the spouses of household heads. This variable was also designed to take

into account which occupational classification out of the individual variables described above relating to the parents of respondents, has the higher classification based on the hierarchy and assign that code as the occupational classification of the respective respondent's parents (refer to appendix 1.16). This new variable has the exact same occupational classification system as the variable ResOccCat (respondent's occupational categories) described above. The information required to construct the mobility table of parents' versus respondents' occupations was now possible.

Tabulating this variable produced the following results:

Table 3.3. Frequency distribution of occupations of Parents of respondents - KMP survey

Household heads' occupational categories	Frequency	Percent	Cum.%
Legislators, senior officials & managers	48	2.08	2.08
Professionals	84	3.64	5.72
Technicians and associate professionals	34	1.47	7.19
Clerks	54	2.34	9.53
Service Workers & Shop & market sales workers	215	9.31	18.84
Skilled Agricultural & Fishery Workers, Craft & Related Trades Workers	502	21.74	40.58
Plant & Machinery Operators & Assemblers	200	8.66	49.24
Elementary Occupations	680	29.45	78.69
No occupational data	492	21.31	100
Total	**2309**	**100**	

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

From this table we se that there is a total of 2,309 parents of respondents with an occupational class classification and excluding those who have no occupational data as was done with the respondents' occupations reduces the total to 1,817.

5.6. Additional recoding requirements

The study of mobility requires the occupational classification of respondents in a survey and their parents. This particular study was only interested in those respondents who were not engaged in schooling. This criterion had to be resolved by selecting only those respondents who were not involved in formal schooling. Even though the sample concerned only examines respondents who are 18 years and older, it is common in South African society that persons over 18 years of age are still involved in school due to various circumstances (refer to appendices 1.17 and 1.18). My initial analysis of the KMP data set revealed that there were respondents older than 18 years enrolled in primary and secondary level schooling. The last part of the selection process is an implicit one as the cross classification of the two variables covering parents and respondents' occupational categories means that if either of the two variables are missing a value then the data of the remaining variable cannot be used as the study of mobility requires data for both variables. This leads us to the next section of this project that covers the sample size of the population to be examined. This has been reduced due to the selection criteria and procedures outlined thus far. There is therefore a need to discuss the precision of the sample selected.

5.7. Sample size and precision

The cross tabulation of parents' occupations versus respondents' occupations excluding those observations where no occupational data was available and respondents who were still on school produces the following frequency table:

Table 4.1. Frequency distribution of parents' versus respondents' occupational classes – KMP survey

Parents' occupational classes	Respondents' occupational classes					
	Managers & Professionals	Clerical & Sales	Skilled Manual Workers	Semi-skilled Manual Workers	Unskilled Manual	Total
Managers & Professionals	21	32	10	4	37	**104**
Clerical, Sales & Service	19	35	16	16	61	**147**
Skilled Manual Workers	18	54	42	26	141	**281**
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	12	23	13	12	40	**100**
Unskilled Manual	26	74	25	28	162	**315**
Total	**96**	**218**	**106**	**86**	**441**	**947**

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

Notes: The category Managers and Professionals was created by combining Legislators, senior officials & managers, Professionals, Technicians & Associate Professionals. The category Clerical, Sales & Service was created by combining Clerks, Service Workers & Shop & Market Sales Workers. The category Skilled Manual Workers was created by combining Skilled Agricultural & Fishery Workers and Craft & Related Trades Workers. The category Semi-skilled Manual Workers was created by combining Plant & Machinery Operators and Assemblers. The category Unskilled Manual refers to the SASCO category of Elementary occupations. The merging of these categories was done to ensure that row and column totals were of an adequate size for comparison purposes.

As can be seen from the table above, the sample size has been decreased to 947 due to the selection criteria imposed on the data. The analysis of mobility entails the utilisation of inflow and outflow percentages and the comparison of these percentages within occupational class categories. It therefore becomes necessary to calculate the confidence intervals of the respective row and column distributions of the frequency table 4.1. This will provide an

indication of the precision of the sample and the reliability of the observations made.

Table 4.2. Mobility from Parents' occupation to Respondents' current occupation (outflow percentages) – KMP survey

Parents' occupational classes	Respondents' occupational classes							
	Mangers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled Manual	Semi-Skilled Manual	Unskilled Manual	Small Vendors	Total	*n*
Managers & Professionals	20	31	10	4	27	9	**100**	*104*
Clerical, Sales & Service	13	24	11	11	33	9	**100**	*147*
Skilled Manual	6	19	15	9	38	12	**100**	*281*
Semi-Skilled Manual	12	23	13	12	31	9	**100**	*100*
Unskilled Manual	8	23	8	9	42	9	**100**	*309*
Small Vendors	0	33	0	0	33	33	**100**	*6*
Total	**10**	**23**	**11**	**9**	**37**	**10**	**100**	***947***

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

To calculate the confidence intervals for the row percentage distributions in table 4.2 the following formula has been used:

Estimator +/- 1.28 $\sqrt{pq/n}$

Where:

Estimator = the row percentage for which the confidence interval is being calculated

1.28 = the confidence level (80 per cent)

p = the estimator

q = 100 – estimator

n = total number in row sub-sample

The calculations produced the following ranges for the row percentages of table 4.2 above:

Table 4.3. Row percentages (parents' versus respondents' occupations) and ranges calculated using a confidence level of 80 per cent – KMP survey

Managers & Professionals						
Row percentages	20	31	10	4	27	9
Calculated range	15 - 25	25 - 37	6 - 13	1 - 6	21 - 32	5 - 12
Clerical, Sales & Service						
Row percentages	13	24	11	11	33	9
Calculated range	9 - 16	19 - 28	8 - 14	8 - 14	28 - 38	6 - 12
Skilled Manual						
Row percentages	6	19	15	9	38	12
Calculated range	5 - 8	16 - 22	12 - 18	7 - 11	35 - 42	9 - 14
Semi-Skilled Manual						
Row percentages	12	23	13	12	31	9
Calculated range	8 - 16	18 - 28	9 - 17	8 - 16	25 - 37	5 - 13
Unskilled Manual						
Row percentages	8	23	8	9	42	9
Calculated range	6 - 10	20 - 26	6 - 10	7 - 11	38 - 46	7 - 11
Small Vendors						
Row percentages	0	33	0	0	33	33
Calculated range	0	9 - 58	0	0	9 - 58	9 - 58

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey
Notes: Range has been calculated using confidence intervals with nine decimal places after which figures have been rounded off to zero decimal places

From the ranges calculated above using the confidence intervals with a confidence level 0f 80 per cent it becomes clear that within rows, the row sample size is sufficiently large to tell the difference between row

percentages.

Table 4.4. Mobility from Parents' occupation to Respondents' current occupation (inflow percentages) – KMP survey

Parents' occupational classes	Respondents' occupational classes						
	Mangers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled Manual	Semi-Skilled Manual	Unskilled Manual	Small Vendors	Total
Managers & Professionals	22	15	9	5	8	10	**11**
Clerical, Sales & Service	20	16	15	19	14	14	**16**
Skilled Manual	19	25	40	30	31	35	**30**
Semi-Skilled Manual	13	11	12	14	9	10	**11**
Unskilled Manual	27	33	24	33	37	30	**33**
Small Vendors	0	1	0	0	1	2	**1**
Total	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
n	*96*	*218*	*106*	*86*	*347*	*94*	*947*

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey

To calculate the confidence intervals for the column percentage distributions in table 4.4 the same formula has been used, as was the case with the row percentage distributions with a few changes:

Estimator +/- 1.28 $\sqrt{pq/n}$

Where:

Estimator = the column percentage for which the confidence interval is being calculated

1.28 = the confidence level (80 per cent)

p = the estimator

q = 100 – estimator

n = total number in column sub-sample

Table 4.5. Column percentages (parents' versus respondents' occupations) and ranges calculated using a confidence level of 80 per cent – KMP survey

Managers & Professionals						
Column percentages	22	20	19	13	27	0
Calculated range	16 - 27	15 - 25	14 - 24	8 - 17	21 - 33	0
Clerical, Sales & Service						
Column percentages	15	16	25	11	33	1
Calculated range	12 - 18	13 - 19	21 - 29	8 - 13	29 - 37	0 - 2
Skilled Manual						
Column percentages	9	15	40	12	24	0
Calculated range	6 - 13	11 - 20	34 - 46	8 - 16	18 - 29	0
Semi-Skilled Manual						
Column percentages	5	19	30	14	33	0
Calculated range	2 - 8	13 - 24	24 - 37	9 - 19	26 - 39	0
Unskilled Manual						
Column percentages	8	14	31	9	37	1
Calculated range	6 - 10	11 - 16	28 - 34	7 - 11	34 - 41	0 - 1
Small Vendors						
Column percentages	10	14	35	10	30	2
Calculated range	6 - 13	9 - 18	29 - 41	6 - 13	24 - 36	0 - 4

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey
Notes: Range has been calculated using confidence intervals with nine decimal places after which figures have been rounded off to zero decimal places

From the ranges calculated above using the confidence intervals with a confidence level 0f 80 per cent it becomes clear that within columns, the column sample size is sufficiently large to tell the difference between column percentages ASK OWEN.

5.8. Respondents excluded from the KMP Survey

The total of 947 observations constitutes 35.82 per cent of the total observations for the KMP survey (2,644). This might be seen as a rather small percentage of the total sample but it should be recognised that unemployment in the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain area has been noted to be over 44 per cent for Blacks and over 20 per cent for coloureds based on Census 1996 results (KMP 2000 Baseline Report, 2003). The KMP survey itself did not collect details on actual unemployment rates for the study area but work done by Nicoli Nattrass saw to the recoding of various variables to capture aspects of labour force participation and unemployment (Nattrass, 2002). Nattrass produced figures of 1,158 respondents who she classified as being either in wage employment, self-employment or casual employment (Nattrass, 2002: 17). The figure of 947 respondents who have been classified into occupational classes compares favourably to the employment figure calculated by Nattrass.

Nattrass used data about willingness to work, availability for work, time spent searching for work, etc. collected by the KMP survey as well as International standards regarding definitions of wage employment, self-employment and causal employment to define who were active labour force participants and who were non-active. My study has taken a broader stance because the unemployed could not be included in the analysis due to a lack of data on the previous occupations of the unemployed, since occupational data is key to establishing mobility across generations. As such certain respondents who have been classified as unemployed or non labour force participants by Nattrass based on her criteria laid out above, have been classified into either wage, self-employment or casual employment by this study based on work history data covering at least the six month period prior to the date of the survey.

Using the raw data of Nattrass' variables the following statistics are produced regarding employment status of respondents in the KMP survey:

Table 5.1. Employment status of respondents for the KMP survey

Employment Status	Frequency	Percent
Wage-employment	933	36.72
Self-employment	218	8.58
Casual-employment	66	2.6
Search-unemployed	448	17.63
Networksearch-unemployed	173	6.81
Marginalized-unemployed	390	15.35
Nonlfparticipant	313	12.32
Total	**2,541**	**100**

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey using Nattrass' employment status variable.

If the 947 observations used in this research project are tabulated using Nattrass' variables the following frequency distribution is produced:

Table 5.2. Employment status of respondents from the KMP survey who qualify for the study of mobility

Employment Status	Frequency	Percent
Wage-employment	603	64.29
Self-employment	137	14.61
Casual-employment	46	4.90
Search-unemployed	85	9.06
Networksearch-unemployed	19	2.03
Marginalized-unemployed	42	4.48
Nonlfparticipant	6	0.64
Total	**938**	**100**

Source: My own analysis of the KMP survey using Nattrass' employment status variable.
Notes: The above total of 938 observations is short of nine observations, which Nattrass has coded as missing, but I have sufficient occupational data for to be coded as employed

Table 5.1 according to Nattrass' variables places 1,217 respondents as being employed (933 respondents in wage employment, 218 respondents being self-employed and 66 respondents casually employed). Table 5.2 (using my figure of 947 observations) places 795 respondents (this includes the nine

observations who I have coded as being employed) as being employed according to my requirements for the mobility study. This means that the mobility study for the area concerned captures 65 per cent of respondents who Nattrass would have classified as being employed. Therefore the sample to be used in this study is useful as it captures, even by strict employment status conventions, 65 per cent of employed respondents. It has to be remembered that the study of mobility requires occupational information for both parents and respondents. My selection criteria has effectively excluded 35 per cent of respondents who Nattrass would have classified as employed due to the lack of occupational data for their parents. The remaining number of respondents out of the total sample of 2,644 that my sample has excluded (that is 1,697) due to the selection criteria for mobility analysis could safely be assigned to the unemployed or non-labour force participants based on Nattrass' (2002) findings or there is no occupational data for the parents of these respondents.

6. Findings

South Africa is a highly unequal society but we know very little about the social dimensions of this inequality. It has been noted that sociologists have yet to make a major contribution to the study of contemporary inequalities in South Africa within social topics such as the reproduction of inequality across generations (Seekings, 2003). Intergenerational mobility is a tool that we can use to gauge the persistence of material advantage from one generation to the next. By therefore examining the pattern and structure of intergenerational mobility we can answer fundamental questions about opportunity, class and privilege (Hout, 1983). This chapter highlights the patterns of mobility evident in the area of Khayelitsha/Mitchell's' Plain and answers the questions of who gets ahead and who does not. This is achieved through the examination of mobility tables that provide a picture of the flow of labour in the area concerned. By describing the flow of labour in the occupational structure, the existential conditions governing the individual's chances of socio-economic success are brought to light (Blau & Duncan, 1967).

Before examining the patterns of movement within the occupational structure of Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain (KMP) it is useful to describe the occupational structure of this area. This has to be located within the context of the broader occupational structure of the City of Cape Town.

6.1. The Occupational Structure of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain area in relation to the city of Cape Town

As noted earlier the KMP survey was conducted in the year 2000 and is a representative sample of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain area using a two-stage cluster sample. To locate this sample within the broader City of Cape Town, census figures for the year 2001 have been utilised to give an overall description of the structure of the labour force in this area. This has been done to highlight differences and similarities that the sample area has

compared to the city as a whole.

The limited sample size for the KMP survey has meant that certain occupational categories have been grouped together based on theoretical foundations relating to the Erikson and Goldthorpe class schema as well as practical considerations relating to the data set and contributions to occupational class analysis in South Africa by authors Crankshaw (1996) and Seekings (2003) (see literature review and methodology section). The occupational categories for Census 2001 have been grouped to match those used in the KMP survey for comparability. The KMP sample only includes Africans and Coloureds hence the following table looks to examine the differences in occupational structure for the two races concerned.

Table 6.1. Occupation by race for the City of Cape Town Census 2001 versus KMP survey 2000 (percentage distribution)

Occupational Categories	CENSUS 2001 City of Cape Town Area		KMP 2000 Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain Area	
	African	Coloured	African	Coloured
Managers & Professionals	12	21	5	17
Clerical, Sales & Service	22	28	20	28
Skilled Manual	15	17	9	16
Semi-skilled Manual	8	12	7	14
Unskilled Manual	43	22	59	25
Total	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
Population and Sample size	208,467	419,397	892	439

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey and Statistics South Africa Census 2001 online data.
Note: Figures have been rounded off therefore totals may not add up to 100%.
Census 2001 figures are for employed persons 18 years and older as are KMP figures.
Undetermined, not applicable, missing and not adequately defined occupations have been excluded.

It must be highlighted from the outset that the KMP survey, which sampled enumerator areas from the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, left out

residential areas where the African middle class would be concentrated. This would be previously White residential areas as well as the African township of Langa (Cook, 1991). This has meant that the KMP sample has larger numbers of respondents employed in elementary occupations (Table 6.1). This is made apparent in table 6.1 above that shows the differing occupational structure of the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain area compared to the City of Cape Town as a whole.

For Unskilled Manual workers we see that 59 per cent of the African population in the KMP sample falls into this occupational class compared to only 43 per cent for the same group looking at Census 2001 figures for the City of Cape Town. Managers and Professionals are significantly smaller in the KMP survey for Africans compared to Census 2001 data (five per cent versus 12 per cent respectively). Similarly the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class is also smaller in the KMP survey for Africans (20 per cent) compared to the Census 2001 figures for the same group (22 per cent). This difference in size of what would traditionally be called the middle class is a reflection of the fact that the KMP survey excluded areas in which the highest concentrations of the African middle class are found. Subsequently the larger Unskilled Manual Workers figure for Africans in this area is explained. Comparing Coloureds in the Managerial and Professional class, the Census 2001 figure is slightly larger than the KMP survey figure (21 per cent versus 17 per cent). For the rest of the occupational classes the Census 2001 and KMP survey figures do not differ greatly for Coloureds. The KMP sample thus compares favourably to the Census 2001 figures for the City of Cape Town in that it too reflects the tendency for the Coloured population group to be more middle class than the African population group. This shows that the KMP survey better represents Coloureds than it does Africans.

Due to the limited sample size to be used in the analysis of mobility for the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain area the main mobility tables to be examined have not been tabulated by race group. It becomes necessary therefore to compare the KMP area to the City of Cape Town as a whole not taking into

account racial differences with respect to the occupational structure.

Table 6.2. Occupation by area - City of Cape Town Census 2001 versus KMP survey 2000 (percentage distribution)

Occupational Categories	CENSUS 2001 City of Cape Town Area	KMP 2000 Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain Area
Managers & Professionals	29	9
Clerical, Sales & Service	27	22
Skilled Manual	14	12
Semi-skilled Manual	9	9
Unskilled Manual	22	48
Total	**100**	**100**
n	868,988	1,331

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey and Statistics South Africa Census 2001 online data.
Note: Figures have been rounded off therefore totals may not add up to 100%
Census 2001 figures are for employed persons 18 years and older as are KMP figures.
Undetermined, not applicable, missing and not adequately defined occupations have been excluded.

From table 6.2 above it becomes clear that the respondents of the KMP area are decidedly less middle class than the City of Cape Town as a whole. The middle class occupations of Managers, Professionals, Clerical, Sales and Service workers includes 56 per cent of people who work in the City of Cape Town according to Census 2001 figures compared to only 31 per cent for the same occupational grouping in the KMP survey. There is a marked difference in the size of the Unskilled Manual occupational class where the City of Cape Town shows this group to be 22 per cent of the total workforce compared to 48 per cent for the KMP survey area. This can in large part be explained due to racial differences in occupations as the City of Cape Town figures include the White population group which is historically been concentrated in the higher occupational classes.

These results highlight some important characteristics about the KMP area. The fact that it is much less middle class than the city as a whole and the concentration of its workforce in the lower manual occupational classes reveals that the area has a different occupational structure to the city and is also a reflection of the sample area in that it is not typical of the City of Cape Town but rather has its own unique peculiarities. An analysis of mobility in this area would thus have to be considered within this situation. The sample itself reflects a population in the area that is more working class than middle class. The interesting aspect would be to se how this class structure has changed from the respondents' parents' generation to their current generation. This would in effect describe whether the nature of mobility in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District is in fact predominantly upward or downward.

6.2. Patterns of mobility within the Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain Occupational Structure

What are the patterns of mobility that can be observed for the KMP area? To answer this question it is best to start with some descriptive analysis of the data. The first step is to compare the distribution of occupational classes in the parents' generation (origin) and respondents' generation (destination). This will show us the extent of the change in the occupational structure from the parents' to the respondents' generations. It must however be remembered that these figures reflect a change in the Black workforce regarding occupational structure. Changes in legislation restricting occupational advancement for Blacks has meant that there would be more opportunity for movement for respondents compared to their parents. The changes witnessed in table 7.1 are thus a reflection of the changes in participation in the workforce of Blacks.

Table 7.1. Percentage distribution of Respondents' origin versus destination occupational classes

Occupational Classes	Origin	Destination
Managers & Professionals	11	10
Clerical, Sales & Service	16	23
Skilled Manual Workers	30	11
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	11	9
Unskilled Manual	33	47
Total	**100**	**100**
n	947	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

Table 7.1 shows that from the parents' generation to the respondents' generation Managers and Professionals have remained basically the same size (11 per cent in the origin (parents' generation) compared to 10 per cent in the destination (respondents' generation)). For the rest of the occupational classes there are however differences. The Clerical, Sales and Service class shows a five per cent increase in size from 16 per cent to 23 per cent across the two generations. This seems to follow the findings of Crankshaw

(1996) who investigated urban Black advancement during the Apartheid period and made note of the increasing size of this class. His study of the changing division of labour in urban South Africa has shown that there were more opportunities for Black advancement into these occupations from the 1970's. The figure provided by the KMP survey shows that these opportunities were taken up by the respondents' generation. The Unskilled Manual class shows an even larger increase across the two generations from 33 per cent to 47 per cent. This is in contrast to Crankshaw's study (1996), which showed that by the late 1980's even though this occupational class still formed a considerable percentage of employment for Blacks, the demand for Unskilled Labour was on the decline. This can be attributed to a number of factors. It has to be remembered that Crankshaw's study covered a much larger sample than the KMP survey and it reflected overall employment trends for urban South Africa as a whole. It was also based on the Manpower survey, which surveyed companies and hence would not have recorded statistics relating to the informal sector where the unskilled workers of the KMP survey area would most likely be employed. This figure is also a result of the area effect. Because of the nature of the sample and that it excludes areas and townships where the Black middle class would most likely be residing, we pick up more respondents located in the 'lower' occupational classes.

The KMP survey would reflect local factors, which would undoubtedly play a role in the occupational structure of the workforce in the area. Specifically Khayelitsha with its cheap housing and squatter camps is a magnet for rural migrants seeking employment opportunities in the City of Cape Town. The majority of these migrants would have limited educational qualifications having come from rural education systems and are therefore unskilled.

Table 7.2 shows the origins of respondents with respect to where they were born and cross tabulates this with their respective highest education level. As can be seen 64 per cent of respondents with a rural origin (that is they were born in a rural area) have an education level of grade nine or lower compared to only 50 per cent of respondents with an urban origin (that is they were born in an urban area). This lack of qualifications would limit their job opportunities to occupations requiring limited or no skills. Another contributing factor is the high unemployment rate for the area concerned and for the Cape Town area in general. Lack of job opportunities have meant that many residents in the KMP area would have to turn to informal trading (classified as unskilled manual work) as a source of income.

Table 7.2. Respondents' highest education level by rural or urban origins (percentage distribution)

Highest Education Level	Urban	Rural	Total
None	2	9	**5**
Primary	27	34	**30**
Grade 8-9	21	21	**21**
Grade 10-11	18	14	**16**
Pre-Matric Certificate	6	5	**5**
Pre-Matric Diploma	1	0	**1**
Matric	14	10	**12**
Post-Matric Certificate	5	3	**4**
Post-Matric Diploma	3	2	**2**
Degree	1	0	**1**
Trade Cert	2	2	**2**
Other	2	1	**1**
Total	**100**	**100**	**100**
n	1188	1125	2313

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

Note: Missing data has been excluded from the table, this accounts for 331 respondents for whom there was either no educational data or no data regarding rural/urban origins. Urban is defined according to the KMP survey as an area under the authority of a municipality, with rural being defined as an area under the authority of a farmer or a chief.

The Skilled Manual and Semi-skilled Manual Worker classes both show a decrease in size over the two generations (Table 7.1). There is a slight decrease in the size of the Semi-skilled Manual Worker class from 11 per cent to 9 per cent but a considerable decrease in size of the Skilled Manual Worker class from 30 per cent to 11 per cent. Crankshaw's study of the Manpower surveys showed that by the end of the 1980's there was an increase in Semi-skilled occupations, which contradicts the results of the KMP survey. The same can be said for Crankshaw's results regarding Skilled Manual Workers. He reflects an increase in the proportions of Black and in particular African worker participation in this category of work where as the KMP survey reflects a dramatic decrease. This could be attributed to the broader definition used in the classification of the skilled trades in the KMP survey, which did not go into as much detail as the Manpower Survey and Crankshaw's subsequent classification of occupations for this survey. This is with specific reference to workers who performed fragmented aspects of the skilled trades (that is plumbers, plasterers, carpenters) but who were not qualified as artisans (Crankshaw, 1996).

What these results confirm is that the occupational structure of the KMP area has changed over the two generations but this has been affected by overall changes in the occupational structure for Blacks in South Africa as a whole as well as localised factors. The question we have to ask at this point is what has the pattern of mobility been by respondents from their parents' generation to their current position. In other words who has moved from which class origin to which class destination.

6.3. Absolute Mobility Patterns

Tracking the movements of respondents across generations is achieved by cross tabulating the parents' of respondents occupations with the respondents' current occupations forming the classic mobility table used in most studies of mobility. When the column percentages for this cross tabulation are calculated, an inflow table is produced that provides the image of labour flowing into the given destination occupations, in other words the distribution of origins for each destination (Hout, 1983).

6.3.1. Inflow Patterns

Table 7.3 below shows the percentage of respondents in each occupational category of the sample who were recruited from the various occupational origins.

Table 7.3. Mobility from Parents' Occupations to Respondents' Current Occupation – KMP Survey (Inflow Percentages)

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes					
	Managers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled Manual Workers	Semi-skilled Manual Workers	Unskilled Manual	Total
Managers & Professionals	22	15	9	5	8	**11**
Clerical, Sales & Service	20	16	15	19	14	**16**
Skilled Manual Workers	19	25	40	30	32	**30**
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	13	11	12	14	9	**11**
Unskilled Manual	27	34	24	33	37	**33**
Total	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**	**100**
n	96	218	106	86	441	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey
Note: Figures have been rounded so columns may not add up to 100 per cent.

In all destination occupational categories (that is the respondents' current occupational classes) respondents were recruited in high proportions from

parents who were unskilled workers (that is in proportions between 24 per cent and 37 per cent). In other words in each destination class respondents who had parents who were unskilled manual workers constitutes a high proportion of that respective destination class. This compares similarly to the work of Schneier (1981) in his mobility study of Soweto and the Cape Town townships of Nyanga, Langa and Gugulethu. Schneier attributed this to the relatively large size of the unskilled labour category among the household heads generation.[10] The results of the KMP survey also has this characteristic showing 33 per cent of respondents' parents being employed in unskilled labour (Table 7.1). Schneier proposes a second reason for this result saying that the rapid decline of the size of the unskilled labour category in the respondents' generation is also a factor. This is however not the case in the KMP survey which shows an increase in the size of this occupational class from the parents' to the respondents' generation (33 per cent in the origin to 47 per cent in the destination reference table 7.1). This seems to suggest that the increase in the size of the Unskilled Manual occupational class is not purely as a result of parents passing transmitting their occupational class to the respondents in the KMP survey. Indeed only 37 per cent of respondents working as unskilled manual labourers had parents' from the same occupational class origin. This means that there has been downward mobility from the parents' to the respondents' generation for the Unskilled Manual labour occupational category and in the respondents' generation specifically this class has grown due to 63 per cent recruitment from 'higher' status (that is occupational classes falling above the Unskilled Manual Labour occupational class on the occupational hierarchy identified in the literature review) class origins (8 per cent from Managerial and Professional class origins, 16 per cent from Clerical, Sales and Service class origins, 30 per cent from Skilled Manual class origins and 11 per cent from Semi-skilled Manual class origins).

[10] Schneier uses household heads as opposed to parents' occupation

Similarly respondents were recruited in high proportions from parents who were skilled manual workers. As is the case with the Unskilled Manual class, this occupational class was relatively large in the parents' generation (30 per cent) (Table 7.1). This differs from Schneier's work who did not find this trend. There was however a dramatic decline in this occupational class from the parents' generation to the respondents' from 30 per cent to 11 per cent.

An important result from table 7.3 is that 74 per cent of respondents in the KMP survey have parents who were employed in Manual occupational classes (Skilled Manual worker (30 per cent), Semi-skilled Manual worker (11 per cent) and Unskilled Manual worker (33 per cent)). This tells us about the dynamics of the labour force in the area specifically showing us the type of occupational classes that are drawn to the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. This is as a result of the area itself, which provides cheap housing as well as opportunities for informal settlement, which appear to have been taken up by working class residents in the parents' generation (as was discussed regarding the census figures in comparison to the KMP figures above). If we look at table 7.1 above we can see that even in the respondents' generation the working class occupational categories still constitutes a large proportion of the occupational profile accounting for 67 per cent of the sample (Skilled Manual worker (11 per cent), Semi-skilled Manual worker (9 per cent) and Unskilled Manual worker (47 per cent)). Overall we can thus see that the area is predominately working class both in its origins and destination occupational classes. Table 7.3 above reveals the working class origins of respondents in the area but also the growth of the middle class through the inflow of labour into the non-manual occupational classes of Managers and Professionals as well as Clerks, Sales and Service workers.

The Clerical, Sales and Service class for respondents recruited 84 per cent of its workforce from other occupational origins. In particular there is high recruitment of respondents whose parents were either skilled manual workers (25 per cent) or Unskilled Manual workers (34 per cent). This is indicative of the growth in opportunities for occupation in the Clerical, Sales and Service class. Because of the rapid growth of this occupational category, its labour

demands cannot be satisfied from within its own ranks, hence an increasing percentage of labour for this category must be recruited from other occupational origins. Seventy per cent of clerical, sales and service employees in the respondents' generation are recruited from "lower" occupational origins (that is occupational classes falling below the Managerial and Professional as well as Clerical, Sales and Service classes on the occupational hierarchy identified in the literature review)[11]. This is indicative of the increasing degree of Black upward mobility into these categories. What must be noted is that this 70 per cent of respondents who are now in a non-manual occupational class (Clerical, Sales and Service) had origins in manual occupational classes.

As with Schneier's study, there is considerable variation in the degree of recruitment between different occupational classes. The Skilled Manual Worker class shows the highest volume of self-recruitment with 40 per cent of respondents in this occupational class coming from the corresponding origin occupational class. The Unskilled Manual Worker class also reflects a high volume of self-recruitment (37 per cent). The lowest volume of self-recruitment is evident in the Clerical, Sales and Service class (16 per cent) as well as the Semi-skilled Manual Worker class (14 per cent). It must be noted however that these two occupational classes (apart from the Managerial and Professional class) are the smallest classes in the parents' generation accounting only for 16 per cent and 11 per cent respectively. This implies a small base from which respondents could have been recruited hence the correspondingly low self-recruitment volumes.

Eighty-six per cent of respondents in the Semi-skilled Manual Worker class were recruited from other occupational class origins. This is peculiar when considering that the Semi-skilled occupational class decreased in size only by a small amount from the parents' to respondents' generation. It does however comply with Crankshaw's study, which found the demand for Semi-Skilled

---

[11] This figure is calculated from the addition of Skilled Manual (25 per cent), Semi-skilled Manual (11 per cent) and Unskilled Manual (34 per cent).

manual labour on the increase at the end of the 1980's and hence one would expect any growth in demand for these occupations to be satisfied outside of this occupational class. This has specific meaning for the KMP area. It seems to suggest that the children of semi-skilled manual workers in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial district are not becoming semi-skilled manual workers themselves. Hence recruitment from other occupational class origins is occurring. So the question can be asked: What do the respondents whose parents were Semi-skilled Manual Workers become?

To answer this question one has to examine the outflow percentages from the parents' to respondents' generations. This distribution will tell us where the children whose parents belonged to a specific occupational class are themselves now employed.

6.3.2. Outflow Patterns

From table 7.4 below we can see that for each origin occupational class a large proportion of the children of those parents are employed as unskilled manual workers. The picture we get is of labour flowing out of different origin occupational classes and into the Unskilled Manual Labour class in consistently high proportions. This adds to the argument that in the respondents' generation the Unskilled Manual worker class has increased at a rapid rate and as table 7.3 has shown recruits its employees from other occupational classes. For parents who were Managers and Professionals we find that 20 per cent of their children are themselves Managers and Professionals. But at the same time 36 per cent of the children of parents who were Managers and Professionals are now themselves employed as unskilled manual workers. We can however observe that 51 per cent of respondents whose parents were Managers and Professionals are now employed in a non-manual occupational class.[12]

[12] This figure is calculated by adding the percentages for the Managers and Professionals category (20 per cent) and the Clerical, Sales and Service category (31 per cent).

Table 7.4. Mobility from Parents' Occupations to Respondents' Current Occupation – KMP Survey (Outflow Percentages)

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes						
	Managers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled Manual Workers	Semi-skilled Manual Workers	Unskilled Manual	Total	*n*
Managers & Professionals	20	31	10	4	36	100	104
Clerical, Sales & Service	13	24	11	11	42	100	147
Skilled Manual Workers	6	19	15	9	50	100	281
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	12	23	13	12	40	100	100
Unskilled Manual	8	23	8	9	51	100	315
Total	10	23	11	9	47	100	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey
Note: Figures have been rounded so columns may not add up to 100 per cent.

The percentages in the shaded cells along the diagonal of the table shows the extent to which occupational status has remained constant between the two generations. We see that this is highest for Unskilled Manual workers with 50 per cent of the children of parents who were Unskilled Manual workers becoming unskilled manual workers themselves. The other diagonal percentages do not show as high a level of constancy across generations showing that labour most likely flows out of the origin occupational class and into other occupational classes (except for unskilled manual labour).

With respect to the question posed earlier regarding the Semi-skilled occupational class it becomes clear that the children of these parents are not becoming Semi-skilled workers themselves (as was assumed earlier). Instead we see that the children of these parents are most likely becoming unskilled manual workers. There is movement of these respondents into the non-manual occupational classes of Managers and Professionals as well as Clerical, Sales and Service workers class accounting for 35 per cent in total. This seems to indicate both upward and downward mobility with respect to respondents with Semi-skilled Manual occupational class origins. Forty-eight per cent of respondents whose parents were semi-skilled manual workers are

now employed in higher status occupational categories with 40 per cent employed in the unskilled occupational category.[13] This gives us an indication of the growth of the unskilled manual labour category in this area, which is in large part due to the growth of informal sector activity.

We now turn to the Unskilled Manual worker category observing that 23 per cent of respondents whose parents were unskilled manual workers are now employed as clerks, sales or service workers and an additional eight per cent are employed as managers or professionals. Again we witness labour flowing out of the Unskilled Manual labour class into non-manual occupational classes.

The outflow percentages paint a good descriptive picture of the pattern of mobility in the KMP area and provide some insight into some of the processes at work in the structuring of the occupational profile. It is of particular importance when considering the occupational mobility of the Black population. This is because it reveals patterns of flow between occupational categories and since the sample concerned is so small and focuses on a specific area, the small shifts which the descriptive picture reveals gives us a better understanding of what form these patterns take.

As can be seen from table 7.4 above, there were 104 respondents who had parents who were either Managers or Professionals. We observe that 80 per cent of these respondents ended up in occupational class categories of a 'lower' status than their parents.[14] This can be attributed to the local factors at work in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. The fact that there seems to be a large amount of downward mobility out of the Managerial and Professional class gives us an indication of the types of professional and managerial jobs that the parents of respondents may have been employed in.

---

[13] The 48 per cent figure is calculated by adding the percentages for the Managers and Professionals (12 per cent), Clerical, Sales and Service (23 per cent) and Skilled Manual Workers (13 per cent).

[14] This figure is calculated by adding the percentages of Clerical, Sales and Service (31 per cent), Skilled Manual (10 per cent), Semi-skilled (4 per cent) and Unskilled (36 per cent) in table 7.4.

There is downward movement into another non-manual occupational category that of Clerical, Sales and Service workers which is congruent with Schneier's findings (1983) for Soweto.

Unlike Schneier's study, the KMP survey does not show a concentration of subjects from households where the household head was employed in the professional category, in other non-manual categories. On the contrary it shows a concentration of respondents in manual occupations. This seems to suggest that the jobs held by parents in the Managerial and Professional category are precarious in that they do not guarantee that occupational class is transmitted across generations. If we look at the work of Blau and Duncan (1967) we find that 51 per cent of male respondents whose fathers were in the Managerial and Professional occupational class are themselves in this class.[15] This shows a high rate of inheritance of occupational class across generations for their sample. It would be expected that this class shows higher levels of occupational inheritance across generations because members of this class have access to more resources and are able to provide opportunities for their offspring to study and receive the required educational levels and credentials for entry into this occupational class (Erikson and Goldthorpe, 1993). So what is different in the KMP area?

The KMP area with its relatively high proportion of cheap housing and informal settlements would clearly draw people of a lower economic status than that of the more established middle class suburbs. This means that the Managerial and Professional class would contain people who occupy the lower end jobs of this class such as teachers or self-employed owners of small businesses. These residents who meet the criteria to be classified into this occupational class, do not have sufficiently high incomes required to ensure that their children remain in a similar class. For example taxi owners would fall into this class as well as shopkeepers and although they might own or run successful business, they do not have the financial means to give their

---

[15] This figured is calculated using table 2.2 in Blau and Duncan's study pg. 28. The American Occupational Structure.

children good education and tertiary level study opportunities. In the case of small business owners it does not mean that wealth is guaranteed for all their offspring. In the case of such families not all children will benefit from working in the business and may have to seek other employment opportunities. These are essentially lower-income middle class jobs that cannot ensure security for all off spring.

For the children of teachers we have a different situation in that the low incomes for teachers would mean that their children would not view employment in a skilled or semi-skilled job as downward mobility because in most cases they would be earning more than their parents did. This has been recognised both by Schneier (1983) and Crankshaw (1997). We thus have the situation in the KMP area where it is easier for children of the Managerial and Professional class to be downwardly mobile because of the instability of this class due to localised factors. This is a reflection of the area and the sample drawn in that although it is representative of the KMP area as a whole, its exclusion of the middle class Black suburbs has meant that the localised factors which are in effect in Khayelitsha and Mitchell's Plain are brought to light. These factors are the actual composition of the population concerned being that it leans towards the less skilled, poorly paid occupations of the occupational class structure.

As Crankshaw (1997) noted, by the end of apartheid the demand for unskilled labour was on the decline even though a large proportion of the Black population was still employed in these types of occupations. The KMP area shows an increase in the size of unskilled labour but once again this is a reflection of different processes at work. As can be seen in table 7.4 above there is considerable downward movement from all occupational classes into the Unskilled Manual worker class. This is not a reflection of an increase in demand for unskilled labour in the area but rather an indication of the growth of the informal sector. Again this is as a result of the availability of cheap housing and opportunities for squatting, which has meant that unemployed unskilled people (drawn by the cheap housing and informal settlements) have had to resort to informal sector activities to make an income. Since the KMP

area is a relatively new township established over the period of 1970's to 1980's (Lemon, 1991) it has to be remembered that parents of respondents could have easily moved from other areas and it is possible that they were employed in formal sectors outside of the Western Cape economy. The main point being that the KMP area excludes some middle class Blacks but not working class Blacks. Their children now faced with unemployment and lack of job opportunities would have to turn to informal forms of trading to make a living. The character of the unskilled labour force in the KMP area is thus different to other areas in that this labour is not engaged fully in the formal sector of employment but rather the informal sector which in varying degrees has the equivalent effect of people floating in and out of unemployment.

Table 7.4 above shows that within the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational classes there is considerable downward movement in absolute terms into 'lower' status occupational classes. Sixty-four per cent of respondents who had parents in Clerical, Sales or Service jobs now find themselves employed in Skilled Manual (11 per cent), Semi-skilled Manual (11 per cent) or Unskilled Manual (42 per cent) occupations. This has to be viewed within the context of what table 7.3 above has shown us. It reported that 70 per cent of clerical, sales and service employees in the respondents' generation were recruited from "lower" occupational origins (that is occupational classes falling below the Managerial and Professional as well as Clerical, Sales and Service classes on the occupational hierarchy identified in the literature review). Taking these two results into context we get the picture of respondents with a Clerical, Sales and Service origin ending up in occupations lower than their origin class but at the same time respondents who are now employed in the Clerical, Sales and Service class having varied occupational origins. This gives us the picture of a churning effect where, for the Clerical, Sales and Service class in particular there is downward mobility from the parents' to the respondents' generation but at the same time in the respondents' generation there is upward mobility into this occupational class. Again we get the impression that the parents' occupational class with respect to non-manual origins is a precarious one, which does not guarantee the

transmission of advantage to their children.

Another peculiarity, which makes itself evident in the outflow table above, is the size of the Skilled Manual class compared to the Semi-skilled Manual class in the parents' generation. We can see that there were 281 respondents in the KMP survey who had parents who were Skilled Manual workers compared to only 100 respondents who had parents in the Semi-skilled occupational class. This is an unexpected result when considering Crankshaw's (1997) findings, which showed that throughout and by the end of the Apartheid period, Semi-skilled manual workers outnumbered Skilled Manual workers. The KMP survey itself did not adequately classify responses into these two categories because of a lack of descriptive information regarding occupations as well as an incomplete definition of skilled and semi-skilled manual work due to the changing division of labour with respect to artisan work. Many responses coded as skilled manual labour are probably semi-skilled without artisan qualifications but none the less are employed to perform fragmented aspects of the skilled trades. As a result I have also decided to combine the occupational categories of Skilled and Semi-skilled manual work to overcome this shortfall.

Table 7.5. Mobility from Parents' Occupations to Respondents' Current Occupation – KMP Survey (Outflow Percentages) – Grouped Skilled and Semi-skilled manual

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes					
	Managers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled & semi-skilled manual	Unskilled Manual	Total	*n*
Managers & Professionals	20	31	14	36	100	104
Clerical, Sales & Service	13	24	22	42	100	147
Skilled and semi-skilled manual	9	21	25	45	100	381
Unskilled Manual	8	23	17	51	100	315
Total	10	23	20	47	100	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey
Note: Figures have been rounded so rows may not add up to 100 per cent.

Table 7.5 highlights the statement made earlier regarding the downward mobility of the children of Managers but in particular Professionals into the Skilled/Semi-skilled occupational class. We can see that 14 per cent of respondents whose parents were either managers or professionals are now employed as skilled/semi-skilled workers. Here it is a case of downward mobility into occupations, which would be better remunerated than teachers, which is what the parents of these respondents would have been employed as. An interesting movement is the upward mobility of respondents whose parents were skilled/semi-skilled manual workers into the occupational classes of Managers and Professionals (9 per cent) and Clerical, Sales and Service (21 per cent) together accounting for a 30 per cent movement into non-manual occupations. There appears to be limited upward mobility from Unskilled Manual labour into Skilled and Semi-skilled Manual labour with only 17 per cent of respondents whose parents were Unskilled Manual labourers becoming Skilled or semi-skilled manual labourers.

An unexpected result in the table above is the outflow of respondents who had parents employed as unskilled labour into the Managerial and Professional class (8 per cent) as well as the Clerical, Sales and Service class (23 per cent) (together accounting for 31 per cent). How would one explain the ability of these parents who would presumably not have access to the necessary resources and networks, to ensure that their children move into non-manual occupational classes. A possible answer to this question is the effect that the change in occupational structure has on the opportunities for respondents to enter into occupational classes of a 'higher' status than their parents. For example we noted that the Clerical Sales and Service occupational class grew by seven per cent between the parents' and respondents' generations.

The above discussions have given a descriptive picture of the flow of labour across the two generations showing that there does seem to be considerable movement from certain origin occupational classes to various destination classes. The relative mobility rates will indicate the influence that social origins have on occupational destinations (Blau and Duncan, 1967). It will also give an indication of the effect that the change in occupational structure across the two generations has had on mobility chances.

6.4. Relative Mobility Patterns

The relative mobility calculation (see methodology) compares the outflow percentages of the individual rows to the total distribution of the sample as a whole amongst the destination classes. In other words it is the ratio of the percentage from a given origin in one occupation to the percentage of the total labour force in this occupation (Blau and Duncan, 1967). This calculation determines whether or not mobility has occurred in excess of what would have been expected if the respondents' destination classes were independent of their respective origin classes.

Table 7.6. Mobility from Parents' occupation to Respondents Current Occupation: Ratios of observed frequencies to frequencies expected on the assumption of independence – KMP survey

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes				
	Managers & Professionals	Clerical, Sales & Service	Skilled Manual Workers	Semi-skilled Manual Workers	Unskilled Manual
Managers & Professionals	2.0	1.3	0.9	0.4	0.8
Clerical, Sales & Service	1.3	1.0	1.0	1.2	0.9
Skilled Manual Workers	0.6	0.8	1.3	1.0	1.1
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	1.2	1.0	1.2	1.3	0.9
Unskilled Manual	0.8	1.0	0.7	1.0	1.1

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

As was the practice of Blau and Duncan (1967), ratios that exceed the expected frequency on the assumption of independence have been underlined. The ratios in the main diagonal have been shaded to emphasize occupational inheritance. It must be noted that a ratio of 1.0 means that mobility observed in this particular cell from the corresponding row variable into the corresponding column variable is expected on the assumption of independence. Where the ratio exceeds 1.0 there has been mobility (be it upward or downward) in excess of what was expected based on the

assumption of independence. For values lower than 1.0 mobility has occurred but below what was expected based on the assumption of independence.

The first result to note is that all the values in the main diagonal of table 7.6, except Clerical, Sales and Service, are greater than expected on the assumption of independence. This is indicative of occupational inheritance being higher than expected (excluding the occupational class of Clerical, Sales and Service). Both studies conducted by Schneier (1983), Duncan and Blau (1967) also found this but neither found the exception for the Clerical occupational category. Table 7.6 above does show a scattering of underlined values off the main diagonal showing that there is movement between different occupational classes from parents' to respondents' generations.

Upward mobility is indicated by underlined values in the table above lying to the left of the diagonal. These values show where movement into other occupational classes has been in excess of expectations under the assumption of independence and into 'higher' destination classes compared to origin classes. This has occurred from the Clerical, Sales and Service class into the Managerial and Professional class showing a ratio of 1.3. There is however also movement in excess of expectations into the Managerial and Professional class from the Semi-skilled Manual worker class (1.2). This is in contrast to Schneier's findings who found that all upward mobility into the professional category was from other non-manual occupational categories. Blau and Duncan had similar results in that their figures revealed movement in excess of expectations into the managerial and professional occupations from other non-manual occupations. They did however find movement into this category from the manual occupational category of skilled manual labour. Table 7.6 above reveals mobility in excess of expectations from the Semi-Skilled Manual worker occupational class into the Skilled Manual worker occupational class, which Schneier did not find. Duncan and Blau on the other hand also found this trend in their data.

Because of the limited sample size and the aggregation of various occupational categories for this study of mobility, refined results regarding

movement between certain occupational categories are not possible. Blau and Duncan were able to calculate ratios for a 17 by 17 category mobility table and were thus able to record movements at a more detailed level. There are however some similar observations that can be drawn between the two studies.

The upward mobility from the Clerical Sales and Service class into the Managerial and Professional class is what Blau and Duncan as well as Schneier have described as movement between two occupational categories adjacent to each other on the hierarchical scale of occupations. The same can be said for the upward mobility of semi-skilled manual workers into the skilled trades. Blau and Duncan specifically refer to this trend as short distance movements. They find that the closer two occupations are to each other on the status hierarchy, the greater is the flow of labour between them. In the KMP mobility study there is however evidence of long distance movement from the Semi-skilled Manual labour class into the Managerial and Professional class.

When considering downward mobility in excess of expectations on the assumption of independence similar observations can be made. Downward mobility in excess of expectations is indicated by underlined values in the table above lying to the right of the diagonal. These values show where movement has been into 'lower' destination classes compared to origin classes. There has been downward movement in excess of expectations from the Managerial and Professional class into the Clerical, Sales and Service class. Here we witness downward mobility from one non-manual occupational class to another. There is however also downward movement from the Clerical, Sales and Service class into the Semi-skilled manual worker occupational class which neither studies by Schneier or Blau et el have found.

An important finding which table 7.6 above reveals is that mobility into the Clerical, Sales and Service class from the origin occupational classes of Semi-skilled Manual and Unskilled Manual are in fact expected based on the assumption of independence with both these categories showing a ratio of

1.0. This indicates that the growth in clerical, sales and service work in the respondents' generation has necessitated upward movement from other occupational origins and is not a result of improved permeability between occupational classes. In other words the changing occupational structure of South African society has allowed for certain mobility patterns to occur. Schneier suggest a method to examine the overall permeability of occupational classes by dichotomising the occupational class categorization into non-manual occupations and manual occupations and calculating the ratio as was done for table 7.6 above.

Table 7.7. Mobility from Parents' occupation (grouped) to Respondents current occupation (grouped) – KMP survey (outflow percentages)

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes			
	Non-manual	Manual	Total	*n*
Non-manual	43	57	100	251
Manual	30	70	100	696
Total	33	67	100	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

Table 7.8. Mobility from Parents' occupation (grouped) to Respondents current occupation (grouped): Ratios of observed frequencies to frequencies expected on the assumption of independence – KMP survey

Parents' Occupational Classes	Respondents' Occupational Classes	
	Non-manual	Manual
Non-manual	1.3	0.9
Manual	0.9	1.1

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

As was the case with Schneier's study, mobility in excess of expectations based on the assumption of independence into non-manual occupational classes only came from other non-manual occupations. In the same vain mobility from manual occupational classes occurred only from other manual occupational classes from the parents' generation. This is indicative of the traditional barriers that appear to exist between the traditional middle and working classes.

7. Mobility and the changing class structure of Black South Africans in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District

At the beginning of this chapter it was stated that sociologists have yet to make a major contribution to the study of contemporary inequalities in South Africa within social topics such as the reproduction of inequality across generations. The findings described above provide an insight into the patterns and process of mobility evident amongst Black South Africans residing in the KMP area and provides a contribution to the gap in the knowledge identified by Seekings (2003).

This chapter will outline these patterns in relation to what the literature has said about other countries and South Africa. The similarities and more specifically the differences between findings from the various studies will be highlighted. It will become clear that in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District intergenerational occupational mobility is occurring but unlike the other studies, downward mobility exceeds upward mobility. This will be explained through examining the 'area effects' in operation in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. The key difference in findings between the international studies and this study is the weaker strength of the higher status occupational categories in transmitting advantage to offspring. In particular it will be argued that the parents of respondents who were employed in higher status occupational categories are in fact located in precarious class positions. It will be shown that the growth in unskilled manual labour can in large part be attributed to high unemployment and the subsequent increase in informal sector activity. Overall it will become clear that the area under examination experiences a 'churning' of the labour force with occupational mobility movements being both upward and downward and not in clear patterns of transmission of advantage as witnessed in industrialised countries. The question of whether the middle class is reproducing itself will also be addressed. The last section will address the issues of future studies in the area of mobility research in South Africa and outline the problems highlighted by the KMP data and possible solutions.

7.1. Mobility in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District compared to other studies

When examining the overall numbers of upwardly mobile, downwardly mobile and immobile respondents in the KMP survey, it becomes clear that downward mobility predominates over upward mobility. Table 8.1 shows that 40 per cent of all respondents for whom parental occupational data was available were downwardly mobile. That is to say they now occupy occupational classes of a 'lower' rank than their parents (according to the hierarchy I have used). Only 32 per cent of respondents were upwardly mobile. This finding for the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District is in contrast to all the studies conducted in the industrialised countries that found upward mobility exceeding downward mobility (de Sève & Bouchard, 1998; Tully, Jackson and Curtis, 1970; Rogoff, 1953; Kingston, 2000; Featherman and Hauser; 1978; Ivan Reid, 1998; Marshall, 1997).

Table 8.1. Type of mobility for respondents from parents' generation to current occupational class – KMP survey

Type of movement	Frequency	Percent
Immobile	272	29
Downward mobility	383	40
Upward mobility	292	31
Total	**947**	**100**

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

But why is there a difference in the overall mobility movement of respondents in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District compared to the international studies with respect to upward versus downward mobility? In the previous section it was mentioned that the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District had specific local factors coming into play, which have been called 'area effects'. What does this mean? Firstly it must be re-emphasised that the sample for the KMP survey excluded the more middle class Black townships and this has meant that the sample area itself is concentrated in working class occupational categories. The area in question, as was discussed in the literature

review, consists of many townships but in particular is dominated by Mitchell's Plain and Khayelitsha. Khayelitsha in particular has predominantly cheaper housing as well as many informal settlements. This has meant that the occupational profile of the area leans more toward the lower ranked occupations of the occupational class categories who are attracted by relatively cheaper housing opportunities. In a sense the sample itself will tend to highlight downward mobility because of this. It has to be remembered that the parents of respondents in this area were not necessarily restricted to working class townships. The Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District effectively serves as an over representation of working class respondents and thus by default those respondents who were most successful (that is upwardly mobile in occupational class terms) would most probably not be residing in the area. Respondents in these areas are concentrated in lower educational categories (refer to table 7.2 showing 72 per cent of respondents having a grade 11 or lower as their highest education level) and would be employed in less skilled occupations. Even when looking at rural versus urban origins the overall educational levels are low. Thus the area sampled has affected the overall mobility picture in that because it focused on mostly working class areas it would reflect downward mobility due to the character and nature of these areas as described above.

Another factor, which has undoubtedly contributed to the dominance of downward mobility over upward mobility in the area, is the high unemployment rate, which is a South African characteristic. Unlike the industrialised countries South Africa has a high unemployment rate of 31 per cent based on the official definition (South African Labour Force Survey Statistical Release, 2003a). The Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District has a rate ranging between 28 per cent (based on the strict definition) and 46 per cent (based on the broad definition) with an intermediate rate of 36 per cent (Nattrass, 2002). These figures show that the area itself has even higher unemployment rates than the already high (by international standards) South African national rate. This has meant that for the respondents' generation, a lack of job opportunities has meant that they would have to turn to informal sector economic activities, which are classified as unskilled manual

labour, as a source of income. This would be reflected as downward mobility as their parents would have more likely been in formal sector employment during periods in South Africa when unemployment was not as high as it is today. This produced larger numbers of unskilled workers in the respondents' generation. The rise in informal sector activity will be discussed in greater detail later.

All the international studies point to strong occupational inheritance in the 'higher' ranked occupational categories and that these higher ranked class origins guarded against downward mobility across many occupational categories. Even the Soweto study conducted by Schneier pointed to this trend but my data for the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial district shows a different pattern. It is observed that for the KMP area the higher ranked occupational classes of Managers and Professionals as well as Clerical, Sales and Service do not guard against downward mobility across many occupational class categories. One in every three respondents who had parents employed in the Managerial and Professional occupational class were downwardly mobile into the occupational class category of Unskilled Manual work (lowest ranked). This result has not been found in any of the other studies reviewed. In fact these studies (excluding the Soweto study) show that at least four out of every ten respondents with parents who were employed in the Managerial and Professional occupational class (in some cases as high as six out of every ten) are employed in the same occupational category. So what is the difference for the KMP area?

My findings suggest that the chances for downward mobility do not in fact decrease as respondents occupational class origins increase in rank (that is as you move higher up the occupational class hierarchy outlined in the literature review and methodology sections). The picture one gets is that the higher ranked or more middle class occupational positions of the parents are in fact precarious in that they do not guarantee the transmission of advantage from the parents' to respondents' generations. Authors from the international studies have stated that movement from occupational positions at the borders between non-manual and manual occupational categories into lower ranked

or higher ranked positions are more likely. It would seem then that the parents of respondents in the KMP area were in fact located in middle class occupations that would be classified as occupations receiving the lowest incomes in this middle class. Parents located in the highest ranked Managerial and Professional occupational class were employed most frequently as teachers, nurses, foremen in mines or manufacturing business, shopkeepers, shop owners or shop supervisors. Unlike the international studies however, downward mobility out of these borderline occupations is predominantly of the long-range kind. As I explained the children of these parents can and do end up in the lowest skilled occupational class location of Unskilled Manual work. The respondents' parents thus occupy such precarious positions in the occupational class hierarchy that there is the possibility that no advantage is in fact transmitted to them. This can be attributed to the area effect of the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, into which poorer respondents have been crowded or are more concentrated. That is to say the sample tends to exclude upwardly or neutrally mobile respondents from middle class backgrounds.

My results complement the international studies in that it too reflects the growth of the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class. Upward mobility into this occupational class has occurred. Like the findings of Schneier (1983) I agree that the growth in this occupational class was due to upward mobility from all manual occupational classes into this class. My relative mobility figures suggest that upward movement out of Manual occupational classes into the non-manual Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class was not in excess of what would be expected due to the growth of this class and its need to satisfy demand from other occupational classes. Once again downward mobility across many occupational classes out of this middle class non-manual occupational origin is witnessed. Like the respondents whose parents were in the Managerial and Professional occupational class, respondents whose parents were in the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class are not guaranteed transmission of advantage. Four out of every ten of these respondents are in fact downwardly mobile into the Unskilled Manual occupational class category. Like parents who were employed in the

Managerial and Professional occupational class, the parents who were employed in the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class also hold precarious positions which do not ensure that they transmit advantaged to their children.

Unlike the international studies the KMP area does reflect a large unskilled manual labour occupational category both in the parents' and respondents' generations (Schneier, 1983 also had this result). This has meant that the composition of respondents' occupational classes have consistently high proportions of unskilled manual occupational class origins. The international studies reflect mobility out of the Unskilled Manual occupational class tied to the fact that in most cases this occupational class has decreased in size from parents' to respondents' generations. The work of Crankshaw (1997) highlighted that the demand for unskilled manual labour in urban South Africa was on a downward trend at the end of Apartheid and yet my figures reflect a considerable increase in this occupational class. But what is the cause of this increase?

7.2. Why the Increase in Unskilled Manual Labour?

Through the recoding procedure used for the KMP survey data set I identified a category of occupation referred to as 'street vendors'. These street vendors are effectively self-employed respondents who are street hawkers selling limited products on a small scale effectively in the informal sector. This level of work sees respondents dipping in and out of employment and is an effort by the unemployed to make a living. Nattrass (2000) notes that case studies examining informal employment consistently reveal that informal sector activity is a 'desperate response' to unemployment rather than meaningful work or a good source of income. Initial analysis showed this group mirroring the characteristics of the Unskilled Manual occupational class and hence they were coded into this class. The increase in the Unskilled Manual occupational class can be examined by removing these informal sector unskilled workers from this occupational class.

Table 8.2. Frequency Distribution of Respondents' occupational class categories reflecting 'street vendors' – KMP survey

Respondents Occupational Class Categories	Frequency	Percent
Managers & Professionals	96	10
Clerical, Sales & Service	218	23
Skilled Manual Workers	106	11
Semi-skilled Manual Workers	86	9
Unskilled Manual	347	37
Unskilled Manual Street vendors	96	10
Total	**947**	**100**

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

From table 8.2 above it is observed that 96 respondents could be considered as being employed in informal sector trade (Unskilled Manual 'street vendor'). We can thus see that the Unskilled Manual occupational class excluding unskilled informal sector employment (in the form of 'street vendors') accounted for 37 per cent of respondents compared to table 7.3 that showed respondents' parents having 33 per cent employed in the Unskilled Manual Labour. The increase thus in the Unskilled Manual occupational class from parents' to respondents' generations excluding street vendor (informal sector employment) was only 4 per cent. Taking into account the street vendors the increase in the Unskilled Manual occupational class goes up to 14 per cent (that is 33 per cent in parents' generation up to 47 per cent in respondents' generation with Unskilled Manual labour accounting for 37 per cent and informal sector street vendors accounting for 10 per cent).

This increase in informal sector employment, which has contributed to the growth of the Unskilled Manual occupational class, can in large part be explained by South Africa's high unemployment rate. Lack of job opportunities will undoubtedly force respondents to seek employment in the informal sector to make a living. In the KMP area specifically the area effect described above, where the sample captures predominantly those respondents who would have been downwardly mobile because the area itself has higher concentrations of working class people due to relatively cheaper housing and opportunities for informal settlement meaning the exclusion of

the successful middle class, coupled with high unemployment creates the correct circumstances for the growth of informal sector employment. This ties into trends recorded by various surveys that have shown that informal sector employment as a percentage of total employment is on the rise in South Africa. The October Household Surveys have shown that informal sector employment has increased as a percentage of total employment from 11 per cent in 1996 to 14 per cent in 1998 (Nattrass, 2000).

7.3. Has the Middle Class Reproduced itself?

My findings show that the middle class has grown from the parents' to respondents' generation by six per cent (table 8.4 below showing 27 per cent middle class occupations in the parents' generation compared to 33 per cent in the respondents' generation (table 8.3). But does this mean that the middle class has reproduced itself? My findings from the previous section show that respondents who had middle class occupational origins (that is non-manual occupations) are not concentrated in middle class destinations.

Table 8.3. Distribution of parents' versus respondents' occupational classes – KMP survey, row percentages

Origin Occupational Class (Parents' Class)	Destination Occupational Class (Respondents' Class)			
	Non-manual Middle Class	Manual Working Class	Total	*n*
Non-manual Middle Class	43	57	**100**	251
Manual Working Class	30	70	**100**	696
Total	**33**	**67**	**100**	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

Table 8.4. Distribution of parents' versus respondents' occupational classes – KMP survey, column percentages

Origin Occupational Class (Parents' Class)	Destination Occupational Class (Respondents' Class)		
	Non-manual Middle Class	Manual Working Class	Total
Non-manual Middle Class	34	23	**27**
Manual Working Class	66	77	**74**
Total	**100**	**100**	**100**
n	314	633	947

Source: My own analysis of KMP survey

From table 8.3 above we can see that 57 per cent of respondents with Non-manual Middle class occupational origins now find themselves in Manual Working class occupational destinations. Looking at table 8.4 the composition of the respondents who are in Non-manual Middle class occupations show that only 34 per cent had parents who were employed in Non-manual Middle class occupations. This tells us that two thirds of respondents who would be classified as Middle class come from Working class occupational origins. It would therefore appear that in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, the middle class has not been reproducing itself. As was mentioned in the previous section the growth of the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class has meant that this particular occupational class could not meet its demand for labour within its own ranks and therefore recruited labour from the manual occupational classes. What the figures in table 8.3 above confirm is that self-recruitment for the middle class was not high. Large numbers of respondents with middle class parents were downwardly mobile (that is 57 per cent of respondents with Non-manual Middle class origins had Manual Working class destinations). This finding is different to Glass and Hall (1954), Tully, Jackson and Curtis (1970), Marshall, Rose, Newby and Vogler (1988) (for male sample) and Kingston (2000) who found that six out of every ten respondents with Non-manual Middle class occupational origins had Non-manual Middle class occupational destinations.

Simultaneously the results point to the upward mobility of respondents with Working class occupational origins into Middle class destinations. Of the

respondents with Working class occupational origins 30 per cent are now in Middle class occupational destinations (refer to table 8.3). As was stated earlier downward mobility exceeds upward intergenerational mobility. There is however upward intergenerational mobility (30 per cent of respondents with Manual Working class origins now having Non-manual Middle class destinations) and the overall effect is that of a 'churning' process for labour in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. Across the two generations in question there appears to be instability in the middle class that results in respondents ending up in predominantly the lowest occupational class destination of Unskilled Manual labour. This result was not found in any of the international studies reviewed. This has been attributed to South Africa's high unemployment rate and the growth of informal sector employment tied to the area effects in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District. The 'churning' effect that is witnessed thus sees a general downwardly mobile trend for respondents in the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District with limited opportunities for upward mobility. Because of the area effects and the subsequent working class nature of the Magisterial District concerned, mobility patterns do not follow the trends identified in the international studies. It has been revealed that the higher ranked Middle class occupational origins are precarious and that transmission of advantage to children of these parents is limited. The changing occupational structure of South Africa in general as revealed by Crankshaw's (1997) statistics has made room for upward movement but even this has not counter acted the excessive downward movement. This raises specific questions for future studies of intergenerational mobility in South Africa.

7.4. Implications for Future Mobility Studies in South Africa

The need to examine mobility in South Africa is important when considering that legislation in this country is aimed at addressing the inequalities created by Apartheid. The lack of quality data sets is a concern in this regard and future studies should aim to examine national mobility trends. The limited sample size of this study has meant that more sophisticated analysis techniques could not be utilised. The focus area of the study itself, although revealing interesting patterns of mobility, has resulted in an emphasis on downward mobility and points to the need for future studies to be careful in sample design when addressing questions of mobility. Specifically samples should be more representative (in this case specifically including areas that are predominantly middle class in a representative manner). This study has revealed (like Schneier's work, 1983) that Black South Africans are still concentrated in manual occupational classes with large proportions in Unskilled Manual labour. It is intriguing that mobility tends to skip the 'intermediate' Manual Working classes of Skilled and Semi-skilled labour in that respondents are moving predominantly either up into the Clerical, Sales and Service occupational class or downward into the Unskilled manual occupational class. It would be interesting to locate the results for the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District within the broader mobility patterns of the country as a whole and determine whether the patterns witnessed are an area phenomenon or a national phenomenon which would make South Africa a unique case amongst international studies of mobility. It is quite astonishing that no large studies of mobility have been conducted (even for the White race group under Apartheid) in South Africa. With the debate around intra racial inequality being on the increase it would be interesting to see which people in South African society are actually getting ahead and more importantly which groups are stuck in cycles of poverty across generations. Larger data sets could help in analysing causes of mobility within the South African context and help in the design and implementation of programmes that could have real effects in redressing inequalities of the past and present and aid in breaking the cycles of poverty evident in our country today.

8. Conclusion

As stated in the beginning of this research project, it can be reiterated that South Africa is a highly unequal society. This has not been the main focus of this study. The extent of the knowledge of this inequality was questioned with specific reference to social dimensions of inequality in the area of intergenerational occupational mobility and what this has meant for the reproduction of inequality across generations. It was stated clearly that the study of the reproduction of inequality across generations in the form of intergenerational mobility was of considerable importance within the South African context. This is because the study of mobility describes how class positions are reproduced over time and therefore contributes towards our understanding of the changing face of inequality from race to class.

A review of international studies of intergenerational mobility revealed that specific patterns were observed that could be used to compare against trends in South Africa. These studies revealed that intergenerational mobility, be it upward or downward, occurred in all cases. It was shown that occupational inheritance was strongest in the managerial and professional occupational class categories. There also appeared to be a barrier to mobility between non-manual and manual occupations. Intergenerational mobility was shown to be predominantly of the short-range type with respondents' occupations clustering around those of their parents' occupations. All the studies recognised the influence that the changing occupational structure has had on patterns of mobility. The limited availability of South African mobility data was also discussed and the only study of this nature (before the year 2000) to be conducted in South Africa was reviewed. This study of a sample of Soweto residents revealed that unskilled manual labour served consistently as the origin for respondents in all occupational categories, which was unlike any other international study reviewed. Like the international studies the Soweto data showed that higher status class origins guarded against downward mobility across many occupational categories.

The focus area of my research, the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District, has revealed some interesting patterns of mobility when compared to the findings of international studies. It is clear that the sample used has exaggerated downward mobility unlike the international studies and Schneier's study of Soweto. This has been explained in terms of the area effect of the Mitchell's Plain Magisterial District which has seen the exclusion of more middle class residents in the sample due to the over representation of working class respondents. My results have shown that unlike the international studies reviewed, higher ranked occupational class origins do not guarantee the transmission of advantage from the respondents' parents' generations to their current generation. This is explained by looking at the actual occupations held by the parents of the respondents in the sample revealing that they were employed in the lowest paid middle class occupations of the Managerial and Professional occupational class. The end conclusion being that the parents of respondents in the sample who were located within the Managerial and Professional occupational classes held precarious positions in the occupational division of labour. This has meant that the children of these parents have found themselves downwardly mobile across many occupational class categories into the lowest ranked occupational class category of unskilled manual labour. My study has also revealed that the growth in the unskilled manual occupational class was in large part due to high unemployment rates for the area and South Africa as a whole that has resulted in respondents engaging in informal sector activities in order to make a living. Like the international studies and Schneier's Soweto study I found that upward mobility was in large part due to the changing occupational structure with specific increase in demand for Clerical, Sales and Service occupations.

I must conclude by adding that the limited amount of quality survey data in the field of mobility studies is a concern. For South Africa it is important to conduct further, more nationally representative studies of mobility, as this would identify the effectiveness of current government policies in redressing the inequalities of the past by tracking the progress and occupational advancement of sections of the populations across generations. It would

seem appropriate to suggest that future studies of intergenerational mobility and indeed intra-generational mobility should take cognisance of the problems I have identified with specific reference to good sample design and representivity with respect to middle class and working class areas. It would be interesting to examine patterns of mobility in other race groups in South Africa and further test the idea that inter racial inequality will be replaced by growing intra-racial inequality. This study has its limitations in that it is focused on a local area and effectively only covers Blacks. It does however have the advantage of examining a sociological topic, which has to a large degree been neglected by South African scholars and sheds some light on a clear gap in the knowledge of 21st century social researchers in this country.

9. Bibliography

1 Abercrombie, N. & Warde, A. (1994). *Contemporary British Society.* Polity Press, Cambridge.

2 Blau, P. and Duncan, O. (1967). *The American Occupational Structure.* John Wiley & Sons, New York.

3 Burger, R., Burger, R. & van der Berg, S. (2003). Emergent Black affluence and social mobility. *TIPS/DPRU Forum.* Department of Economics, University of Stellenbosch.

4 Butcher, S., Crankshaw, O. & Welch, M. (2001). GIS Technology and Survey Sampling Methods: The Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain 2000 Survey. *Social Dynamics* 27 (2): pp. 156 - 174.

5 Cook, G. (1991). Cape Town. in Lemon, A. (1991). *Homes Apart: South Africa's segregated cities.* David Philip Publishers, Cape Town.

6 Crankshaw, O. (1996). Changes in the racial division of labour during the Apartheid era. *Journal of Southern African Studies* 22 (4): pp. 633-656.

7 Crankshaw, O. (1997). *Race, class and the changing division of labour under Apartheid.* Routledge, London.

8 Crankshaw, O. & Parnell, S. (2002). Urbanisation in the Johannesburg Region, 1946 - 1996. *Working Paper No. 20.* Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town.

9 de Sève, M. & Bouchard, G. (1998). Long Term Intergenerational Mobility in Quebec (1851-1951): The Emergence of a new Social Fluidity Regime. *Canadian Journal of Sociology*, 23(4) pp. 349 - 367.

10 Erikson, R. & Goldthorpe, J. (1993). *The Constant Flux - A Study of Class Mobility in Industrial Societies*. Oxford University Press, New York.

11 Featherman, D.L., Jones, F.L., and Hauser, R.M., (1975), Assumptions of Social Mobility Research in the US: The Case of Occupational Status, *Social Science Research,* 4, pp.340.

12 Glass, D. & Hall, J. (1954). Social mobility in Great Britain: A study of intergeneration changes in status. In Coxon, A. and Jones, C. (eds.), Social Mobility: selected readings, The Chaucer Press, Suffolk, 1975.

13 Goldthorpe, J., Llewellyn, C. and Payne, C. (1980). *Social Mobility and Class Structure in Modern Britain*. Oxford University Press, New York.

14 Hout, M. (1983). Mobility Tables. *Series: Quantitative Applications in the Social Sciences*. Sage University Paper, Sage Publications, Ohio.

15 Hout, M. (2003). How might inequality affect intergenerational mobility? A review and an agenda. *Working Paper, Survey Research Centre, University of California*, Berkley, Centre for the study of the new inequalities.

16 Human, L. and Hofmeyer, K., (1985). *Black Managers in South African Organisations*. Juta and Co, Ltd., Cape Town.

17 Ishida, H. (1993). *Social Mobility in Contemporary Japan*. Macmillan Press, London.

18 Järvelä, M. (1983). The Permanency of Social Classes and Intergenerational Mobility in Finland. *Acta Sociologica* 26 (3/4): pp.287 - 298.

19 Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain Baseline Report. (2003). *South Africa Labour and Development Research Unit*, Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town, Population Studies Centre, University of Michigan.

20 Kingston, P. (2000). *The Classless Society*. Stanford University Press, Stanford.

21 Leibbrandt, M., Woolard, I. & Bhorat, H., (2000). Understanding Contemporary Household Inequality in South Africa. *Studies in Economics and Econometrics*, vol. 24 no. 3: pp. 31 - 51.

22 Marshall, G. and Rose, D. (1997). Proletarianization in the British Class Structure? in Marshall, G (ed.), *Repositioning Class: social inequality in industrial societies*. Sage Publications, London.

23 Marshall, G. Rose, D. Newby, H. and Vogler, C. (1988). *Social Class in Modern Britain*. Unwin Hyman, London.

24 Marshall, G., Sydorenko, S. and Roberts, S. (1997). Intergenerational Mobility in Russia. in Marshall, G (ed.), *Repositioning Class: social inequality in industrial societies*. Sage Publications, London.

25 Miller, S. (1956). The concept and measurement of mobility, *Transactions of the Third World Congress of Sociology*, vol. 3, 1956, International Sociological Association, London in Coxon, A. and Jones, C. (eds.), *Social Mobility: selected readings*, The Chaucer Press, Suffolk, 1975.

26 Nattrass, N. (2002). Unemployment, employment and labour-force participation in Khayelitsha/Mitchell's Plain. *Working Paper No. 12*. Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town.

27 Nattrass, N. & Seekings, J. (2001). "Two Nations"? Race and Economic Inequality in South Africa Today. *Daedalus - Journal of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences*, 2001. Vol. 130, No. 1: pp. 45 - 70.

28 Nattrass, N., (2000). The Debate About Unemployment in the 1990's. *Studies in Economics and Econometrics* vol. 24 no. 3: pp. 73 - 90.

29 Payne, G. and Abott, P., (1990). *The Social Mobility of Women: Beyond Male Mobility Models*. The Falmer Press, Hampshire.

30 Reid, I. (1998). *Class in Britain*. Polity Press, Cambridge.

31 Rogoff, N. (1953). *Recent trends in occupational mobility*, Free Press. Indianapolis.

32 Schneier, S. (1983). Occupational Mobility Amongst Blacks in South Africa. *Working Paper No. 58*. South Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, Division of Research, School of Economics, University of Cape Town.

33 Seekings, J. (2000). Visions of society: Peasants, workers and the unemployed in a changing South Africa. *Studies in Economics and Econometrics* November 2000 vol. 24 no. 3: pp. 53 - 72.

34 Seekings, J. (2003). Social stratification and inequality at the end of Apartheid. *Working Paper No. 31*. Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town.

35 Statistics South Africa, Census. (2001). *Summary Statistics*. Pretoria, StatsSA.

36 Statistics South Africa. (2001). *Annual Report*. Pretoria, StatsSA.

37 Statistics South Africa. (2003a). *South African Labour Force Survey Statistical Release, P 0210*. Pretoria, StatsSA.

38 Statistics South Africa. (2003b). *South African Standard Classification of Occupations. Labour Force Survey*. Pretoria, StatsSA.

39 Tully, J., Jackson, E. and Curtis, R. (1970). Trends in occupational mobility in Indianapolis, in Coxon, A. and Jones, C. (eds.), *Social Mobility: selected readings*, The Chaucer Press, Suffolk, 1975.

40 Van der Berg, S. & Marincowitz, G. (1999). Poverty and affluence: Trends in and prospects for black incomes. *Chapter for the Institute for Futures Research*, Stellenbosch.

41 Wilkinson, P. (2000). City Profile: Cape Town. *Cities*. 2000 vol. 17, no. 3: pp. 195 - 205.

42 www.stata.com

APPENDICES

Please note that appendices 1.1 through to 1.22 have been printed in the do-file format for the statistical analysis programme STATA. This means that the appendices can be used as is within the STATA programme and can be used to manipulate actual data.

Appendix 1 - KMP adult questionnaire

KHAYELITSHA / MITCHELL'S PLAIN SURVEY 2000

For All Adults (age 18 and older)

[Mark 6. November 2000]

1. Household ID number: ☐☐☐☐

2. Name of respondent: ..... P.Code ☐☐

3. Enumerator Area ☐☐☐☐☐ 4. Place .....

5. Date of first visit .....
   Date of second visit (if necessary) .....
   Date of third visit (if necessary) .....

6. Interviewer code: ☐☐☐

7. Time interview started .....

8. Time interview ended .....

SUPERVISOR TO SIGN IF RESPONDENT IS NOT FOUND AFTER THREE VISITS AND ANOTHER ADULT ANSWERS THE QUESTIONNAIRE ON THE RESPONDENT'S BEHALF (AVOIDING THE ATTITUDINAL QUESTIONS)

9. Name of supervisor .....

10. Signature of supervisor. .....

RESPONDENTS TO ANSWER ALL MODULES

The School of Economics
University of Cape Town
Cape Town

SALDRU: 4807147
Department of Economics: 6502727

LIST OF MODULES

Page

NB: The Respondent must be taken through ALL Modules

A. EDUCATION AND OTHER CHARACTERISTICS

A.1. How old are you? [(years)]

A.2. How were you classified under the old apartheid racial classifications?

African	1
Coloured	2
Indian	3
White	4
Other (specify)	996

We now want to ask you some questions about education. We are going to start off by asking questions about your primary and secondary schooling, i.e. up to matric.

A.3. Have you ever attended school? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of this module

A.4. Are you in school now, or attending school classes of any kind (including night school)? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to A.6

A.5. If yes, what grade/standard (or level of education) are you in?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate	12
I never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

[Now go to A.10]

NB: Questions A.6 - A.9 are for those who are no longer in school

A.6. What was the highest grade/standard that you were enrolled in (even if you did not complete or pass it)?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate / Grade 12	12
I never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

A.7. What was the highest grade/standard that you passed?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate / Grade 12	12
I never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

A.8. What was the most important reason why you stopped attending school?
[Prompt with options if necessary]

I was pregnant	1	I passed matric	8
I got as far as I wanted to get	2	The teachers were no good	9
I wasn't passing, so it seemed pointless continuing	3	There was too much violence at the school	10
I was offered a job	4	I was bored with school	11
I wanted to look for a job	5	I was expelled	12
An extra year of schooling isn't worth it	6	My family could not afford to send me to school any more	13
I was needed at home	7	There was no school in the area	14
I don't know	999	I needed to work at home	15
Other (explain)			996

A.9. How old were you at the start of your final year at school? [(age)]

A.10. How old were you when you first attended Sub-A? [(age)]

NB: If the respondent went to a school which had a 'small sub-A' and a 'big sub-A' then regard 'big sub-A' as the first year of school. So, in A.10 you will record their age in 'big sub-A'. In A.11, you only say Yes for those who repeated 'big sub-A'.

A.11. Did you repeat Sub-A (take it more than once)? Yes [1] No [2]

A.12. Sometimes after people start school there are one or more years when they do not enrol in school. Were there any years you did not enrol in school? If yes, how many?

Yes, one year	1	Yes, more than four years	5
Yes, two years	2	No	0
Yes, three years	3	I cannot remember	999
Yes, four years	4		

A.13. Sometimes people enrol in school, but have to withdraw before the end of the school year. Where there any years you withdrew from school before the end of the year? If yes, how many?

Yes, one year	1	Yes, more than four years	5
Yes, two years	2	No	0
Yes, three years	3	I cannot remember	999
Yes, four years	4		

A.14. Sometimes people complete the school year, but do not pass. Were there any years that you failed?

Yes, one year	1	Yes, more than four years	5
Yes, two years	2	No	0
Yes, three years	3	I cannot remember	999
Yes, four years	4		

A.15. Did most of your schooling take place in urban or rural areas? urban [1] rural* [2] same in each [3]

*A rural area is a commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer) or a rural area inside a Bantustan under the authority of a chief or a rural area outside South Africa

A.16. Overall, during your schooling, what type of student were/are you?

Towards the bottom of the class	1	Above average	4
Below average	2	Towards the top of the class	5
Average	3	I don't remember	999

A.17. Think about the last year you attended school (currently enrolled students should think about their experience this year). How would you characterise the quality of teaching?

Excellent	1	Poor	4
Good	2	Extremely poor	5
OK (average)	3	I don't know	999

A.18 When you were in school, did you ever have a job or do any work for money? (NB: This is also for people currently in school)

Yes	1
No	2
I can't remember/don't know	999

A.19. While you were in school, were you ever offered a job that would have meant that you had to leave school? (NB: This is also for people currently in school) Yes [1] No [2]

A.20. If yes, did you take the job? Yes [1] → Skip to A.22 No [2] → Skip to A.21

A.21. If no, why not?

I turned down the job because the wage was not good enough	1
I turned down the job because I wanted to carry on with my education	2
I turned down the job because my parents forced me to carry on with my education	3
I turned down the job for other reasons (specify)	996
I don't remember	999

Now we are going to ask questions about education after school. Those who are still in school should skip to question A.32

A.22. Since leaving school, have you done any additional studying or formal training? [Pick the highest level of qualification if the respondent has done more than one kind of additional training/studying]

Not applicable, I am still in school	1
No	2
Yes, training course for the unemployed	3
Yes, training courses at work	4
Yes, trade certificates	5
technikon/ technical training	6
Yes, university	7
Other (explain)	996

→ Skip to A.27

A.23. How old were you when you began these studies? [ ] (age)

A.24. Have you completed these studies? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to A.27

A.25. How old were you when you stopped them? [ ] (age)

A.26. Did you receive a degree or certificate? If yes, what?

No	0	Yes, a nursing diploma	5
No (because I am still studying)	1	Yes, a teaching diploma	6
Yes, a university degree	2	Yes, other diploma	7
Yes, a trade certificate	3	Yes, a certificate	8
Yes, other technical qualification	4	Yes, other certificate	9
Other (explain)			996

A.27. Have you ever been on a training programme for unemployed people? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to A.32

A.28. If yes, what training did you receive? .....

.....

A.29. How long did the training course last? [ ] (weeks) and [ ] (months)

A.30. Was it a full-time or a part-time course? Full-time [1] Part-time [2]

A.31. Did you ever get a job using the skills that you learned on that course? Yes [1] No [2]

A.32. How well do you speak English?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.33. How well do you read and write English?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.34. How well do you speak Afrikaans?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.35. How well do you read and write Afrikaans?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.36. How well do you speak Xhosa?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.37. How well do you read and write Xhosa?

Not at all	1
Poorly	2
OK	3
Very well	4
Excellently	5
Don't know	999

A.38. Is your main language something other than English, Afrikaans or Xhosa? Yes [1] No [2]

A.39. What is your religion?

Catholic	1	Congregational	10
Dutch Reformed	2	Apostolic	11
Methodist (including AME)	3	Anglican (including Church of England, SA)	12
Pentecostal/charismatic (specify)	4	African Independent Churches (specify)	13
Jewish	5	Lutheran	14
Zionist Christian Church	6	Presbyterian	15
Baptist	7	Ethiopian	16
Muslim	8	Hindu	17
No religion	9	African traditional (non-Christian) spiritual beliefs	18
Other (specify)			996

A.40. How important are religious activities in your life?

Irrelevant	1
Unimportant	2
Important	3
Very important	4

A.41. Please indicate if you belong to any of the following:

A.41.1. A sports team — Yes [1] No [2]

A.41.2. A sports club (gym, martial arts etc) — Yes [1] No [2]

A.41.3. A church organisation — Yes [1] No [2]
A.41.4. Specify .....

A.41.5. A community organisation or social club — Yes [1] No [2]
A.41.6. Specify .....

A.42. What is your most serious health problem/disability?

Heart problems	1	HIV	8
Blood pressure	2	AIDS	9
Diabetes	3	Sexually transmitted diseases	10
Cancer	4	Problems with sight or hearing	11
TB (tuberculosis)	5	Physically handicapped	12
Eczema	6	Mental health problems	13
Respiratory problems (asthma, emphysema, bronchitis)	7	I have no serious health problems/disabilities	14
Other (specify)			996

A.43. How often do physical disabilities or health problems interfere with your ability to work at a job, look for a job, study or work around the house?

Never	1	Fairly often	4
Almost never	2	Most of the time	5
Occasionally	3	Always (permanent disability)	6

A.44. How often, if at all, does hunger interfere with your ability to work at a job, look for a job, study or work around the house?

Never	1	Fairly often	4
Almost never	2	Most of the time	5
Occasionally	3	Always (permanent disability)	6

B. MIGRATION

B.1. What is the name of the place where you were born?

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest township/suburb:

B.2. What kind of a place was this? Was it a [Read Out]

An urban area (under the authority of a municipality)	1	Skip to B.6
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	2	
Rural area inside a Bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	3	

IF RESPONDENT WAS BORN IN A RURAL AREA:

B.3. In what year did you first move to a township or suburb?

(year)

B.4. What is the name of the first township or suburb you moved to stay in?

B.5. When you first moved to live in a township or a suburb, did you or your household: (Read out)

Rent your own formal house	1
Share a formal house with another family	2
Rent a brick room in the backyard of a house	3
Rent a shack in the backyard of a house	4
Live in a shack in a shack settlement	5
Live in a shack in a site and service settlement	6
Live in a domestic servant's room	7
Stay in a hostel	8
Stay in a room at a workplace	9
Stay in a hut on a construction site	10
Buy your own formal house	11
Other (specify)	996

B.6. In what year did you first move to stay in Cape Town?

	(year)
Not Applicable: Born in Cape Town	0

B.7. What is the name of the last place that you stayed in before you moved to this dwelling?

Not Applicable: Born in this dwelling	0

B.8. What is the last **type** of place that you lived in before you moved to stay in this dwelling? (Read Out)

I lived with my parents (or other relatives) in a formal house in an urban area	1
I rented my own house in an urban area	2
I shared a house with another family in an urban area	3
I lived in a formal backyard room in an urban area	4
I lived in a backyard shack in an urban area	5
I lived in a shack in a shack settlement	6
I lived in a domestic servants room	7
I stayed in a hostel	8
I stayed in a room at the workplace where a family member worked	9
I stayed in a hut on a construction site where a family member worked	10
I lived on a white-owned farm	11
I lived in a rural area in the former homelands	12
Not Applicable: Born in this dwelling	0
Other (specify)	996

B.9. Did you leave your previous dwelling or accommodation because: (Do Not Prompt)

I married recently and did not want to continue living in my parents' home	1
I married recently and wanted my own place	2
I was tired of sharing a house with another family	3
I was tired of the problems of renting a shack in someone's backyard	4
I was evicted by the owner	5
I could no longer afford to pay the rent	6
My family was not allowed to live with me there	7
I was retrenched or fired from my job	8
My wages were too low (and I could no longer afford to live there)	9
I went on pension (and could no longer afford to live there)	10
I moved because of violence/crime	11
I left my job/was fired and moved here to find work	12
I wanted to move closer to my place of education	13
I was forcibly removed by the apartheid government	14
Not Applicable: Born in this dwelling	0
Other (specify)	996

B.10. In what year did you move to live in this dwelling?

Not Applicable: Born in this dwelling	0

C. INTERGENERATIONAL MOBILITY

[Please think about the household where you spent most of your childhood. If you spent your childhood in many different households, then please think about the household where you lived when you were fourteen years old]

C.1. Where was this household?

Name of the place:	
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:	

C.2. What kind of an area was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1
City/town inside a Bantustan	2
City/town outside South Africa	3
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4
Rural area inside a Bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5
Rural area outside South Africa	6
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

C.3. How did this household compare to other households in the area in terms of its standard of living?

It was much worse off than most other households in the area	1
It was a little worse off than most other households in the area	2
It was about the same as most other households in the area	3
It was a little better off than most other households in the area	4
It was much better off than most other households in the area	5
I don't know	999

C.4. What was your relationship to the head of the household at that time?

The head of household was my father	1
The head of household was my mother	2
The head of household was my grandfather	3
The head of household was my grandmother	4
The head of household was my uncle	5
The head of household was my aunt	6
The head of household was my stepfather	7
The head of household was my brother	8
The head of household was my sister	9
Other (describe)	996

[We are now going to ask some questions about the Head of Household]

C.5. For most of your childhood, what did the head of the household do? For example, was s/he for most of the time employed, unemployed or retired?

Employed as a regular wage worker	1	Go to C.6.1
Employed as a casual worker	2	Go to C.6.2
Self employed	3	Go to C8
Unemployed and looking for a job	4	Go to C.7
Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking for a job	5	
Not working and not looking for a job	6	
Retired	7	
I don't know	999	

C.6.1. If the head of household was in regular wage-employment (i.e. employed and paid a wage), what kind of work did he/she usually do? Please describe in a full sentence.

.....

.....

C.6.2. If the head of household was a casual worker, what kind of work did he/she usually do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.9]

C.7. If the head of household was unemployed or retired, but had been employed previously in wage-employment, what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.9]

C.8. If the Head of Household was self-employed, what kind of self-employment was it?

Trader	1	Self-employed artisan	3
Farmer	2	I don't know	999
Other (Specify)			996

C.9. What level of education had the Head of Household passed?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate	12
Std 7/8/9 + diploma	13	Matric + teacher training	14
Matric + nursing	15	Matric + Technikon	16
Some university	17	Completed university	18
S/he never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

C.10. Where was the head of the household born?

Name of the place:	
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:	
I don't know	999

C.11. What kind of an area was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1	→ Go to C.14
City/town inside a Bantustan	2	
City/town outside South Africa	3	
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4	
Rural area inside a bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5	
Rural area outside South Africa	6	
I don't know	999	
Other (specify)	996	

C.12. Did the head of the household ever live in a city or a town outside the bantustans?

Yes	1	
No	2	→ Skip to C.14
I don't know	999	

C.13. When he or she was living in town was he or she:

A migrant worker living in a hostel	1
Settled in town with a job	2
A domestic worker living on the property	3
Other (specify)	4
I don't know	999

C.14. Under apartheid, people classified as African had to carry passes. Did the head of the household carry a 'dompass'? Do you know what his or her status was under the pass laws?

He or she had a 'long pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (A) (B) or (C) rights, i.e. the right to live in a town because of birth, employment, long residence, marriage or parentage	1
He or she had a 'short pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (D) rights, i.e. the right to live in the town tied to current migrant employment contract	2
Not applicable because not classified as African under apartheid	3
Illegal	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

[We are now going to ask some questions about the Wife or Husband of the Head of Household

C.15. Did the head of the household have a wife/husband living in the same household?

Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to C.27 I don't know [999]

C.16. What was your relationship to the wife/husband of the head of the household at that time?

The husband of the head of household was my father	1
The wife of the head of household was my mother	2
The husband of the head of household was my grandfather	3
The wife of the head of household was my grandmother	4
The husband of the head of household was my uncle	5
The wife of the head of household was my aunt	6
The wife of the head of the household was my sister	7
The husband of the head of the household was my brother	8
Other (describe)	996

C.17. For most of your childhood, what did the wife/husband of the head of the household do? For example, was s/he for most of the time employed, unemployed or retired?

Employed as a regular wage worker	1	→ Go to C.18.1
Employed as a casual worker	2	→ Go to C.18.2
Self employed	3	→ Go to C20
Unemployed and looking for a job	4	→ Go to C.19
Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking for a job	5	
Not working and not looking for a job	6	
Retired	7	
I don't know	999	

C.18.1. If the wife/husband of the head of household was in regular wage-employment (i.e. employed and paid a wage), what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

C.18.2. If the wife/husband of the head of household was a casual worker, what kind of work did he/she usually do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.21]

C.19. If the wife/husband of the head of household was unemployed or retired, but had been employed previously in wage-employment, what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.21]

C.20. If the wife/husband of the head of household was self-employed, what kind of self-employment was it?

Trader	1	Self-employed artisan	3
Farmer	2	I don't know	999
Other (Specify)			996

C.21. What level of education had the wife/husband of the head of household passed?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate	12
Std 7/8/9 + diploma	13	Matric + teacher training	14
Matric + nursing	15	Matric + Technikon	16
Some university	17	Completed university	18
S/he never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

C.22. Where was the wife/husband of the head of household born?

Name of the place:	
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:	
I don't know	999

C.23. What kind of an area was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1	→ Go to C.26
City/town inside a Bantustan	2	
City/town outside South Africa	3	
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4	
Rural area inside a bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5	
Rural area outside South Africa	6	
I don't know	999	
Other (specify)	996	

C.24. Did the wife/husband of the head of household ever live in a city or a town outside the bantustans?

Yes	1	
No	2	→ Skip to C.26
I don't know	999	

C.25. When he/she was living in town was he/she:

A migrant worker living in a hostel	1
Settled in town with a job	2
A domestic worker living on the property	3
Other (specify)	996
I don't know	999

C.26. Under apartheid, people classified as African had to carry passes. Did the wife/husband of the head of the household carry a 'dompass'? Do you know what his/her status was under the pass laws?

He/she had a 'long pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (A) (B) or (C) rights, i.e. the right to live in a town because of birth, employment, long residence, marriage or parentage	1
He/she had a 'short pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (D) rights, i.e. the right to live in the town tied to current migrant employment contract	2
Not applicable because not classified as African under apartheid	3
Illegal	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

If you have not already told us about your father, please answer Questions 27-38
[If C.4 = 1 or C.16 = 1, go to C.40]

C.27. Was your father a member of the household at the time?

Yes [1] → Skip to C.29 No [2]

C.28. If your father was not living with you, was this because he was deceased (dead)?

Yes [1] → Skip the rest of the module No [2]

C.29. Where was he living at the time?

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:
I don't know 999

C.30. For most of your childhood, what did your father do? For example, was he for most of the time employed, unemployed or retired?

Employed as a regular wage worker	1	→ Go to C.31.1
Employed as a casual worker	2	→ Go to C.31.2
Self employed	3	→ Go to C33
Unemployed and looking for a job	4	→ Go to C.32
Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking for a job	5	
Not working and not looking for a job	6	
Retired	7	
I don't know	999	

C.31.1 If your father was in regular wage-employment (i.e. employed and paid a wage), what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence.

.....

.....

C.31.2 If your father was a casual worker, what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.34]

C.32. If your father was unemployed or retired, but had been employed previously in wage-employment, what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.34]

C.33. If your father was self-employed, what kind of self-employment was it?

Trader	1	Self-employed artisan	3
Farmer	2	I don't know	999
Other (Specify)			996

C.34. What level of education did your father pass?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate	12
Std 7/8/9 + diploma	13	Matric + teacher training	14
Matric + nursing	15	Matric + Technikon	16
Some university	17	Completed university	18
S/he never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

C.35. Where was your father born?

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:

C.36. What kind of an area was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1	→ Go to C.39
City/town inside a Bantustan	2	
City/town outside South Africa	3	
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4	
Rural area inside a bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5	
Rural area outside South Africa	6	
I don't know	999	
Other (specify)		996

C.37. Did your father ever live in a city or a town outside the bantustans?

Yes	1
No	2
I don't know	999

→ Skip to C.39

C.38. When he was living in town was he:

A migrant worker living in a hostel	1
Settled in town with a job	2
A domestic worker living on the property	3
Other (specify)	4
I don't know	999

C.39. Under apartheid, people classified as African had to carry passes. Did your father carry a 'dompass'? Do you know what his status was under the pass laws?

He had a 'long pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (A) (B) or (C) rights, i.e. the right to live in a town because of birth, employment, long residence, marriage or parentage	1
He had a 'short pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (D) rights, i.e. the right to live in the town tied to current migrant employment contract	2
Not applicable because not classified as African under apartheid	3
Illegal	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

If you have not already told us about your mother, please answer Questions 40-51
[If C.4 = 2 or C.16 = 2, skip the rest of this module]

C.40. Was your mother a member of the household at the time?

Yes 1 → Skip to C.42 No 2

C.41. If your mother was not living with you, was this because she was deceased (dead)?

Yes 1 → Skip the rest of the module No 2

C.42. Where was she living at the time?

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:

C.43. For most of your childhood, what did your mother do? For example, was she for most of the time employed, unemployed or retired?

Employed as a regular wage worker	1	Go to C.44.1
Employed as a casual worker	2	Go to C.44.2
Self employed	3	Go to C.46
Unemployed and looking for a job	4	
Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking for a job	5	Go to C.45
Not working and not looking for a job	6	
Retired	7	
I don't know	999	

C.44.1 If your mother was in regular wage-employment (i.e. employed and paid a wage), what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence.

.....

.....

C.44.2 If your mother was a casual worker, what kind of work did he/she usually do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.47]

C.45. If your mother was unemployed or retired, but had been employed previously in wage-employment, what kind of work did he/she do? Please describe in a full sentence. .....

.....

[Now go to C.47]

C.46. If your mother was self-employed, what kind of self-employment was it?

Trader	1	Self-employed artisan	3
Farmer	2	I don't know	999
Other (Specify)			996

C.47. What level of education did your mother pass?

Class 1 / Grade 1/Sub-A	1	Class 2 / Grade 2/Sub-B	2
Std 1 / Grade 3	3	Std 2 / Grade 4	4
Std 3 / Grade 5	5	Std 4 / Grade 6	6
Std 5 / Grade 7	7	Std 6 / Grade 8 / Form 1	8
Std 7 / Grade 9 / Form 2	9	Std 8 / Grade 10 / Form 3 / Junior Certificate	10
Std 9 / Grade 11 / Form 4	11	Std 10 / Matric/ Form 5 / Senior Certificate	12
Std 7/8/9 + diploma	13	Matric + teacher training	14
Matric – nursing	15	Matric + Technikon	16
Some university	17	Completed university	18
S/he never went to school	0	I don't know /cannot remember	999

C.48. Where was your mother born?

Name of the place:	
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:	
I don't know	999

C.49. What kind of an area was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1	→ Go to C.52
City/town inside a Bantustan	2	
City/town outside South Africa	3	
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4	
Rural area inside a bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5	
Rural area outside South Africa	6	
I don't know	999	
Other (specify)		996

C.50. Did your mother ever live in a city or a town outside the bantustans?

Yes	1	
No	2	→ Skip to C.52
I don't know	999	

C.51. When she was living in town was she:

A migrant worker living in a hostel	1
Settled in town with a job	2
A domestic worker living on the property	3
Other (specify)	4
I don't know	999

C.52. Under apartheid, people classified as African had to carry passes. Did your mother carry a 'dompass'? Do you know what her status was under the pass laws?

She had a 'long pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (A) (B) or (C) rights, i.e. the right to live in a town because of birth, employment, long residence, marriage or parentage	1
She had a 'short pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (D) rights, i.e. the right to live in the town tied to current migrant employment contract	2
Not applicable because not classified as African under apartheid	3
Illegal	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

D. Employment History

D.1. Are you still at school? (i.e. a full-time school pupil) Yes [1] → Skip the rest of the module No [2]

D.2. What proportion of your weekdays since leaving school have you been working, looking for work, or doing domestic duties/child care or other things?

	Almost all of the time	Most of the time (i.e. over half of the time)	About half of the time	Some of the time (i.e. less than half of the time)	None of the time
D.2.1. Working as a regular wage worker	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.2. Working as a casual worker	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.3. Self-employed	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.4. Working in the family business/farm	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.5. Looking for work	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.6. Domestic duties/child care	1	2	3	4	5
D.2.7. Post-school education and training					
D.2.8. Other – specify	1	2	3	4	5

D.3. Have you ever been self-employed? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to D.12

D.4. In what year did you first become self-employed? (or how old were you?) 19 or (age)

D.5. How much money did you make in a month On average during your first year of self-employment? R

D.6. Has this form of self-employment been the only work you have ever had? Yes [1] No [2]

→ Skip the rest of the module

D.7. When was the last year that you were self-employed? 19

D.8. How much were you making (on average) a month then? R

D.9. Describe what you did

Made clothing for sale direct to customers	1
Made clothing for sale to a factory/shop	2
Made food for sale	3
Made beer for sale	4
Made other items for sale (specify)	5
Shop-keeper	6
Shebeen-owner	7
Ran a spaza shop from your home	8
Bought fruit/vegetables, repackaging them, and reselling them on the street	9
Sold other goods on the street	10
Repaired shoes	11
Hairdressing services/ beauticians	12
Professional services (lawyer, dentist, architect, doctor etc)	13
Self-employed artisan	14
Building or repairing houses	15
Taxi owner-driver	16
Owner-driver (other transport)	17
Collected wood/fuel	18
Herbalist/traditional healer	19
Child-minding services	20
Other services (describe)	21
Other (describe)	996

D.10. How many people (other than yourself) did you employ? [ ]

D.11. Why did you bring your self-employment to an end?

I wasn't making any money, so I stopped	1
I became disabled/sick	2
I lost my business premises	3
My stock was stolen	4
My machinery was stolen	5
Thieves kept stealing the money I made	6
I didn't have enough money to buy stock or materials	7
I had problems with my employees	8
I decided to look for paid employment	9
I was offered paid employment	10
Other (explain)	996

D.12. Have you ever worked for a wage? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of the module

D.13. If you were working prior to 1986, what was your status under the pass laws?

Had a 'long pass', i.e. had Section 10(1) (A) (B) or (C) rights, i.e. the right to live in a town because of birth, employment, long residence, marriage or parentage	1
Had a 'short pass' i.e. had Section 10(1) (D) rights, i.e. the right to live in the town tied to current migrant employment contract	2
Not applicable because not classified as African under apartheid	3
Not applicable because respondent was not working before 1986	4
Illegal	5
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

D.14. In what year did you obtain your first paid wage employment? (or how old were you?) 19 or (age)

D.15. Are you still in this job? Yes 1 No 2

Skip the rest of this module

D.16. How did you get this job?

I responded to a newspaper advertisement	1
A household member told me about the job	2
A friend/ relative (in a different household) told me about the job	3
A household member got me the job at their workplace	4
A friend/ relative (in a different household) got me the job at their workplace	5
I went to a factory and waited outside until I got the job	6
I knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops until I got the job.	7
I got the job through an employment agency	8
I asked someone who had employed me before for a job	9
I waited on the side of the road until I got a job (the recruiting lorry method)	10
I found the job on a notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	11
Other (specify)	996

D.17. What products did your employer make, or what services did your employer provide? Please describe in a full sentence.....

.....

D. 18. What was your occupation – i.e what kind of work did you do – in your first job? Please describe in a full sentence.

.....

.....

D.19. In which economic sector was your first job?

Agriculture, fishing, forestry	1
Mining and quarrying	2
Manufacturing – specify (e.g. clothing, food products)	3
Electricity gas, water	4
Construction	5
Wholesale/ retail	6
Catering and accommodation	7
Transport, storage and communication	8
Finance, real estate and business services	9
Other services (private sector) - specify (e.g. medical, educational, domestic services)	10
Other services (government sector) specify (e.g. medical, educational services, armed forces, police)	11
General government (national)	12
General government (provincial)	13
General government (local)	14
Other – specify	996
I don't know	999

D.20. Were you paid your wages each day, each week, each fortnight or each month?

Daily wage	1
Weekly wage	2
Fortnightly wage (i.e. paid every two weeks)	3
Monthly wage	4

D.21. What was your starting wage? R

NB: Older respondents may give you the wage in pounds. If so, multiply by 2 to get Rands

[NB: Check that the wage is for the time period indicated in D.20. So, if the person was paid weekly, then the starting wage should be a weekly wage. If the respondent was paid daily, the starting wage should be a daily wage]

D.22. Was this your wage before or after tax was deducted?

Wage before tax	1
Wage after tax	2 → Skip to D.24

D.23. If it was your wage before tax, what was your after-tax wage? R

D.24. How many hours a week did you work for this wage? (hours)

D.25. Where was your first job [Give the place name, not the name of the factory]

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:

D.26. What kind of a place was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1
City/town inside a Bantustan	2
City/town outside South Africa	3
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4
Rural area inside a Bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5
Rural area outside South Africa	6
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

D.27. Why are you no longer in your first job?

I got fired as a result of trade union activity (e.g. striking)	1
I got fired for other reasons	2
I was laid off (e.g. the workplace closed/ was downsized)	3
I left of my own accord because I didn't like the work	4
I left because I did not like the working conditions (e.g. unsafe/ unpleasant)	5
I left of my own accord because the wage was too low	6
I left of my own accord because I found a better job	7
I got pregnant and was forced to leave by my employer	8
I got pregnant and chose to leave	9
I retired	10
I moved	11
I got married	12
Other (specify)	996

D.28. When did your first job end? [ ] (year)

D.29. What was your wage at the time your job ended? R [ ]

D.30. Was this your wage before or after tax was deducted?

Wage before tax	1
Wage after tax	2

→ Skip to D.32

D.31. If it was your wage before tax, what was your wage after tax? R [ ]

D.32. Have you had any other jobs between your first job and your present job (if you have one)?

Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of the module

D.33. How did you get the last job (prior to the one you have now – if you have one)?

I responded to a newspaper advertisement	1
A household member told me about the job	2
A friend/ relative (in a different household) told me about the job	3
A household member got me the job at their workplace	4
A friend/ relative (in a different household) got me the job at their workplace	5
I went to a factory and waited outside until I got the job	6
I knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops until I got the job.	7
I got the job through an employment agency	8
I asked someone who had employed me before for a job	9
I waited on the side of the road until I got a job (the recruiting lorry method)	10
I found the job on a notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	11
Other (specify)	996

D.34. Think about your most recent job (prior to your present job if you have one). What products did your employer make, or what services did your employer provide? Please describe in a full sentence.....
.....

D.35. What kind of work did you do in your most recent job (prior to your current job if you have one)? Please describe in a full sentence. .....
.....

D.36. In which economic sector was your most recent job (prior to your current job)?

Agriculture, fishing, forestry	1
Mining and quarrying	2
Manufacturing – specify (e.g. clothing, food products)	3
Electricity gas, water	4
Construction	5
Wholesale/ retail	6
Catering and accommodation	7
Transport, storage and communication	8
Finance, real estate and business services	9
Other services (private sector) - specify (e.g. medical, educational, domestic services)	10
Other services (government sector) – specify (e.g. medical, educational services, armed forces, police)	11
General government (national)	12
General government (provincial)	13
General government (local)	14
Other – specify	996
I don't know	999

D.37. Where was this job? [Give the place name, not the name of the factory]

Name of the place:
Name of the nearest town or magisterial district:

D.38. What kind of a place was this?

City/town outside of the Bantustans	1
City/town inside a Bantustan	2
City/town outside South Africa	3
A commercial farm (under the authority of a farmer)	4
Rural area inside a Bantustan (under the authority of a chief)	5
Rural area outside South Africa	6
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

D.39. Why are you no longer in this job?

I got fired as a result of trade union activity (e.g. striking)	1
I got fired for other reasons	2
I was laid off (e.g. the workplace closed)	3
I left of my own accord because I didn't like the work	4
I left of my own accord because the wage was too low	5
I left of my own accord because I found a better job	6
I got pregnant and was forced to leave by my employer	7
I got pregnant and chose to leave	8
I retired	9
I moved	10
I got married	11
Other (specify)	996

D.40. When did this job end? [ ] (year)

D.41. What was your wage at the time your job ended? R [ ]

D.42. Was this your wage before or after tax was deducted?

Wage before tax	1
Wage after tax	2 → Skip the rest of the module

D.43. If it was your wage before tax, what was your wage after tax? R [ ]

E. Wage Employment (i.e working for a wage/salary)

[Explain that this is for all people being **paid a wage/salary to work regularly for the same employer/s**, whether full-time, part-time, in the formal sector or the 'informal' sector. It includes those on fixed wages and those whose wages vary according to productivity – i.e. piece rate bonuses, profit sharing etc.]

E.1. Are you currently in wage employment? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of the module

E.2. Do you have more than one wage job? Yes [1] No [2]

We are going to ask you questions about your current job. [NB: If you have more than one wage job, then **tell us about your main wage job first**, and then tell us about your second (or next most important) wage job later. If you have more than two jobs, then tell us about the rest in the Casual Work module]

E.3. How long have you been working for this employer?

E.3.1. [(years)] and E.3.2. [(months)]

(Interviewer: Record numbers in both boxes – i.e put in 0 for years if the respondent has been working in the job for less than a year).

E.4. How did you get this job?

I responded to a newspaper advertisement	1
A household member told me about the job	2
A friend/ relative (in a different household) told me about the job	3
A household member got me the job at their workplace	4
A friend/ relative (in a different household) got me the job at their workplace	5
I went to a factory and waited outside until I got the job	6
I knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops until I got the job.	7
I got the job through an employment agency	8
I asked someone who had employed me before for a job	9
I waited on the side of the road until I got a job (the recruiting lorry method)	10
I found the job on a notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	11
Other (specify)	996

E.5. What does your employer produce, or what services does your employer provide? Please describe in a full sentence.....

.....

E.6. What kind of work do you do in this job? Please describe in a full sentence .....

.....

E.7. In which economic sector do you work?

Agriculture, fishing, forestry	1
Mining and quarrying	2
Manufacturing specify (e.g. clothing, food products)	3
Electricity gas, water	4
Construction	5
Wholesale/ retail	6
Catering and accommodation	7
Transport, storage and communication	8
Finance, real estate and business services	9
Other services (private sector) - specify (e.g. medical, educational, domestic services)	10
Other services (government sector) specify (e.g. medical, educational services, armed forces, police)	11
General government (national)	12
General government (provincial)	13
General government (local)	14
Other – specify	996
I don't know	999

E.8. Do you get paid every day, every week, every fortnight, or every month?

Daily wage	1
Weekly wage	2
Fortnightly wage (i.e. paid every two weeks)	3
Monthly wage	4

E.9. What is your basic wage (i.e. excluding overtime payments)? R

E.10. Is this your wage before or after tax is deducted?

Wage before tax is deducted	1
Wage after tax is deducted	2 → Skip to E.12

E.11. If it was your wage before tax, what was your wage after tax? R

E.12. How many hours a week are you required to work for your basic wage (i.e. excluding paid overtime)? (hours)

E.13. Do you ever work overtime? Yes 1 No 2 → Skip to E.18

E.14. How often do you work overtime?

Occasionally when the firm is busy (and one can never predict when this will be)	1
For part of the year (during the busy season)	2
For most of the year	3
Almost all of the time	4
All of the time	5

E.15. When you are working overtime, how many hours do you usually work overtime in a week? (hours)

E.16. What do you get paid (before tax) per hour of over-time? R

E.17. How many hours over-time did you work last month? (hours)

E.18. I now want to ask about bonus payments, piece-rate payments etc

	Yes	No		Amount (on average) per month
E.18.1.1. Do you get a 13th cheque or an annual bonus every year (even when times are hard for the employer?)	1	2	E.18.1.2	
E.18.2.1. Do you get extra money on a piece rate basis?	1	2	E.18.2.2	R
E.18.3.1. Do you get a share of profits?	1	2	E.18.3.2	R
E.18.4.1. Do you get bonus payments when the business is doing well?	1	2	E.18.4.2.	R
E.18.5.1. Do you get any other form of productivity related pay? (specify)	1	2	E.18.5.2	R

E.19. Please fill in the following details about deductions. [Interviewer ask for a recent pay-slip, but don't push it if the respondent is reluctant....]

E.19.1. Gross earnings and subsidies (before deductions)	R
E.19.2. Tax	R
E.19.3. UIF	R
E.19.4. Medical aid	R
E.19.5. Bond payments to a bank	R
E.19.6. Union fees	R
E.19.7. Pension	R
E.19.8. Other (specify)	R
E.19.9. Other (specify)	R
E.19.10. Net earnings (after all deductions)	R

E.20. Interviewer: Did you see the pay slip?

Yes [1] No [2] The respondent says he/she does not get given a payslip [3]

E.21. Would you like to work more hours at your current wage (not the over-time rate) in order to increase your earnings? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.23

E.22. If yes, how many more hours would you like to work a week? [ ] (hours)

E.23. Do you get any free goods or services from your employer? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.24

E.23.1. If so, please tell us what free goods and services you get.

.....

.....

E.24. If the boss said that times were hard and that he would have to shut down the business if wages were increased this year, would you:

Accept the situation until times got better	1
Go on strike	2
Leave the job	3
Stay in the job, but start looking for another one	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

E.25. How long would it take to teach someone how to do your job?

Less than a day	1
A few days	2
one week	3
1 – 4 weeks	4
1 3 months	5
3 6 months	6
6 months to a year	7
1 – 2 years	8
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

E.26. How much do you spend a month on transport to and from this job? R [ ]

E.27. Were you unemployed (and wanting a job) before you got your current job? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.30

E.28. If yes, how long were you unemployed before starting your current job?

E.28.1. [ ] (years) and E.28.2. [ ] (months)

E.29. When you were unemployed, did you do any of the following to find a job during the last month that you were unemployed?

	Yes	No
E.29.1. Respond to a newspaper advertisement	1	2
E.29.2. Relied on a household member to tell you about jobs	1	2
E.29.3. Relied on friends/ relatives (in different households) to tell you about jobs	1	2
E.29.4. Relied on a household member to get you a job at their workplace	1	2
E.29.5. Relied on friends/ relatives (in different households) to get you a job at their workplace	1	2
E.29.6. Went to a factory and waited outside	1	2
E.29.7. Knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops.	1	2
E.29.8. Went to an employment agency	1	2
E.29.9. Asked someone who had employed them before for a job	1	2
E.29.10. Waited on the side of the road for a job (the recruiting lorry method)	1	2
E.29.11. Looked on notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	1	2

Interviewer: The rest of the Module is for those who said that they had more than one wage job – i.e. those who answered "yes" to question E.2. Those who have more than two jobs should just talk about their **second most important wage job** here. They will be able to talk about their other jobs in the section on casual work.]

E.30. How long have you been working for this employer?

E.30.1. [(years)] and E.30.2. [(months)]

E.31. How did you get this job?

I responded to a newspaper advertisement	1
A household member told me about the job	2
A friend/ relative (in a different household) told me about the job	3
A household member got me the job at their workplace	4
A friend/ relative (in a different household) got me the job at their workplace	5
I went to a factory and waited outside until I got the job	6
I knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops until I got the job.	7
I got the job through an employment agency	8
I asked someone who had employed me before for a job	9
I waited on the side of the road until I got a job (the recruiting lorry method)	10
I found the job on a notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	11
Other (specify)	996

E.32. What does your employer produce, or what services does your employer provide? Please describe in a full sentence.....

.....

E.33. What kind of work do you do in this job? Please describe in a full sentence

.....

.....

E.34. In which economic sector do you work?

Agriculture, fishing, forestry	1
Mining and quarrying	2
Manufacturing – specify (e.g. clothing, food products)	3
Electricity gas, water	4
Construction	5
Wholesale/ retail	6
Catering and accommodation	7
Transport, storage and communication	8
Finance, real estate and business services	9
Other services (private sector) - specify (e.g. medical, educational, domestic services)	10
Other services (government sector) – specify (e.g. medical, educational services, armed forces, police)	11
General government (national)	12
General government (provincial)	13
General government (local)	14
Other – specify	996
I don't know	999

E.35. Do you get paid every day, every week, every fortnight, or every month?

Daily wage	1
Weekly wage	2
Fortnightly wage (i.e. paid every two weeks)	3
Monthly wage	4

E.36. What is your basic wage (i.e. excluding overtime payments)? R

E.37. Is this your wage before or after tax is deducted?

Wage before tax is deducted	1
Wage after tax is deducted	2 → Skip to E.39

E.38. If it was your wage before tax, what was your wage after tax? R

E.39. How many hours a week are you required to work for your basic wage (i.e. excluding paid overtime)? (hours)

E.40. Do you ever work overtime? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.45

E.41. How often do you work overtime?

Occasionally when the firm is busy (and one can never predict when this will be)	1
For part of the year (during the busy season)	2
For most of the year	3
Almost all of the time	4
All of the time	5

E.42. When you are working overtime, how many hours do you usually work overtime in a week? (hours)

E.43. What do you get paid (before tax) per hour of over-time? R

E.44. How many hours over-time did you work last month? (hours)

E.45. I now want to ask about bonus payments, piece-rate payments etc

	Yes	No		Amount (on average) per month
E.45.1.1. Do you get a 13th cheque or an annual bonus every year (even when times are hard for the employer?)	1	2	E.45.1.2	
E.45.2.1. Do you get extra money on a piece rate basis?	1	2	E.45.2.2	R
E.45.3.1. Do you get a share of profits?	1	2	E.45.3.2	R
E.45.4.1. Do you get bonus payments when production is good?	1	2	E.45.4.2.	R
E.45.5.1. Do you get any other form of productivity related pay? (specify)	1	2	E.45.5.2	R

E.46. Please fill in the following details about deductions. [Interviewer ask for a recent pay-slip, but don't push it if the respondent is reluctant…]

E.46.1. Gross earnings and subsidies (before deductions)	R
E.46.2. Tax	R
E.46.3. UIF	R
E.46.4. Medical aid	R
E.46.5. Bond payments to a bank	R
E.46.6. Union fees	R
E.46.7. Pension	R
E.46.8. Other (specify)	R
E.46.9. Other (specify)	R
E.46.10. Net earnings (after all deductions)	R

E.47. Interviewer: Did you see the pay slip?

Yes [1] No [2] The respondent says he/she does not get given a payslip [3]

E.48. Would you like to work more hours at your current wage (not the over-time rate) in order to increase your earnings? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.50

E.49. If yes, how many more hours would you like to work a week? [ ] (hours)

E.50. Do you get any free goods or services from your employer? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to E.52

E.51.1. If so, please tell us what free goods and services you get

.....

.....

E.52. If the boss said that times were hard and that he would have to shut down the business if wages were increased this year, would you:

Accept the situation until times got better	1
Go on strike	2
Leave the job	3
Stay in the job, but start looking for another one	4
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

E.53. How long would it take to teach someone how to do your job?

Less than a day	1
A few days	2
one week	3
1 4 weeks	4
1 – 3 months	5
3 – 6 months	6
6 months to a year	7
1 2 years	8
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

E.54. How much do you spend a month on transport to and from this job? R [ ]

F. Unemployment

F.1. How many people do you know who got jobs the following ways:

	None	A few	Many
F.1.1. Responding to a newspaper advertisement	1	2	3
F.1.2. A household member told them about the job	1	2	3
F.1.3. A friend/ relative (in a different household) told them about the job	1	2	3
F.1.4. A household member got them the job at their workplace	1	2	3
F.1.5. A friend/ relative (in a different household) got them the job at their workplace	1	2	3
F.1.6. They went to a factory and waited outside until they got the job	1	2	3
F.1.7. They knocked on factory gates and visited private homes and shops until they got the job.	1	2	3
F.1.8. They got the job through an employment agency	1	2	3
F.1.9. They asked someone who had employed them before for a job	1	2	3
F.1.10. They waited on the side of the road until they got a job (the recruiting lorry method)	1	2	3
F.1.11. They found the job on a notice board in a community centres/ shopping centre, shop etc.	1	2	3
F.1.12. They went on a training course and then got a job because of the training	1	2	3

F.2. What is the best way, for someone with your skills and experience to find a job?
Only prompt if necessary

Responding to newspaper advertisements	1
Relying on household members to tell me about jobs	2
Relying on friends/ relatives (in different households) to tell me about jobs	3
Relying on household members to get me jobs at their workplace	4
Relying on friends/ relatives (in different households) to get me jobs at their workplace	5
Going to factories and waiting outside until I get a job	6
Knocking on factory gates and visiting private homes and shops until I get a job.	7
Using an employment agency	8
Asking previous employers for a job	9
Waiting on the side of the road until I get a job (the recruiting lorry method)	10
Looking on notice boards in a community centres/ shopping centres, shops etc.	11
Other (specify)	996

F.3. How much do you agree/disagree with each of the following statements

	Strongly disagree	Dis-agree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	Strongly agree
F.3.1. It is pure luck whether you get a job or not	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.2. Looking for work is not worth the money you spend on transport	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.3. There are so many unemployed people that it is pointless looking for a job	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.4. Employers employ the friends and relatives of their existing workforce rather than other people	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.5. People who have had jobs before have a better chance of getting a job than someone who has never had a job before	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.6. People with more education have a better chance of getting a job	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.7. Many unemployed people could get jobs if they really wanted to	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.8. If you ask for a lower wage you have a better chance of getting a job	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.9. Younger people are particularly disadvantaged when it comes to getting jobs	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.10. If there were more jobs available, more people would look for work	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.11. The government should provide jobs for everyone who wants one	1	2	3	4	5
F.3.12. Training courses for the unemployed would help the unemployed get jobs	1	2	3	4	5

F.4. How useful, do you think, the following activities are for someone like you (i.e. with your skills and experience) when looking for work

	Totally point-less	Point-less	Sometimes pointless, sometimes helpful	Help-ful	Very helpful	I don't know
F.4.1. Looking in newspapers	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.2. Relying on household members to tell you about jobs	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.3. Relying on friends /family members in different households to tell you about jobs.	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.4. Relying on household members to get you a job at their workplace.						
F.4.5. Relying on friends / family members in different households to get you a job at their workplace.	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.6. Going to factories and waiting outside	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.7. Knocking on factory gates and/or visiting private homes and shops	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.8. Visiting employment agencies	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.9. Phoning up (or visiting) old employers and asking for jobs	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.10. Waiting on the side of the road for jobs s	1	2	3	4	5	999
F.4.11. Looking on notice boards in community centres, shopping centres etc.	1	2	3	4	5	999

F.5. Do you currently work for a wage (full-time or part-time)? Yes [1] → Skip the rest of this module. No [2]

F.6. Are you currently self-employed? Yes [1] → Skip the rest of this module. No [2]

F.7. Do you want a job (whether full or part-time wage employment or self employment)? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of this module.

F.8. When are you available for work:

F.8.1. Monday to Friday during the day? Yes [1] No [2]

F.8.2. Monday to Friday during the evenings? Yes [1] No [2]

F.8.3. Over the weekend? Yes [1] No [2]

F.9. What kind of employment would you prefer?

Full-time wage employment	1
Part-time wage employment	2
Part-time wage employment and casual employment	3
Other (specify)	996

F.10. How long have you been wanting work (and been without any paid employment)?

F.10.1. [ ] (years) and F.10.2. [ ] (months)

(Interviewer: Record numbers in both boxes – i.e put in 0 for years if the respondent was unemployed for less than a year).

F.11. Did you turn down any job offers during this time period? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to question F.17

F.12.1 When was this? 19 [ ] (year)

F.12.2. What was the job? (Describe) .....

.....

F.13. What was the wage offered? R [ ]

F.14. Was this a take-home wage offer, or the wage before tax?

Take-home wage	1
Wage before tax	2
I don't know	999

F.15. State if this was a:

Daily wage	1
Weekly wage	2
Fortnightly wage (i.e. paid every two weeks)	3
Monthly wage	4

F.16. Why did you choose not to accept this job offer?

The job was too far away	1
The wage offered was too low	2
The cost of travel would have been too high	3
The job was below my educational/skill level	4
I did not like the job	5
Family commitments prevented me from accepting	6
I wanted to further my studies	7
Other (specify)	996

F.17. We now want to ask you how long you think it will be before you get a job. [Interviewer, push the respondents for a yes or a no. Don't let them say 'I don't know' unless they really do not know]

	Yes	No	I don't know
F.17.1. Do you think there is a realistic possibility that you will get a job in the next month?	1	2	999
F.17.2. Do you think there is a realistic possibility that you will get a job in the next three months?	1	2	999
F.17.3. Do you think there is a realistic possibility that you will get a job in the next six months?	1	2	999
F.17.4. Do you think there is a realistic possibility that you will get a job in the next year?	1	2	999

F.18. Do you have any employed friends/family members who say that they may be able to find you work at their workplaces Yes [1] No [2]

F.19. Did you travel anywhere last week in search of work? Yes [1] No [2]

Skip to F.23

F.20. How much did you spend on travel costs associated with looking for work last week? R [ ]

F.21. Where did the money for travel come from?

A family member in the household	1
A family member outside the household	2
A friend in the household	3
A friend outside the household	4
A money lender	5
My savings	6
Other (specify)	996

F.22. Do you have to pay back this money? Yes [1] No [2]

F.23. If you get a job, how many hours per week would you desire to work? (hours per week)

F.24. What do you think would be a reasonable take-home monthly wage for you given your desired hours of work and your age, education, skills, and area of residence, etc.

(R per month)

F.25. What is the absolute minimum take-home monthly wage below which you would not be prepared to work in any job (taking into account your desired hours of work)? (R per month)

F.26. Would you be prepared to go elsewhere to look for a job? Yes [1] No [2]

F.27. How far would you be willing to travel daily if you got a paid job?

Up to 1 km	1
Up to 3 km	2
Up to 5 km	3
Up to 10 km	4
More than 10 km	5

NB: Assume it takes 15 minutes to walk 1 klm and an hour to walk 1 hour.

F.28. Some people respond to unemployment by becoming self-employed. Why have you decided not to go this route?

I do not have enough money (capital) to start a business	1
I cannot borrow money to start a business/no one will lend to me	2
A small business is not a well-paying activity/it will not be profitable	3
I prefer to wait for a waged job	4
Self-employment income is risky - sometimes it is profitable and at other times it is not	5
I do not have and business connections or friends/relatives in business	6
I don't have any training or skills to start a business	7
I don't know the legal procedures for opening a business	8
I am deterred by the high wages I will have to pay my workers	9
There is too much crime involving small businesses	10
Other (specify)	996

F.29. When did you last do any of the following activities?

	Within the last week	2-4 wks ago	1-3 mths ago	4-6 mths ago	7-12 mths ago	1-2 yrs ago	3-5 yrs ago	6-10 yrs ago	More than 10 yrs ago	Never	I can't remember
F.29.1. Looked in newspapers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.2. Relied on household members to tell you about jobs	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.3. Relied on friends /family members in different households to tell you about jobs.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.4. Relied on household members to get you a job at their workplace.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.5. Relied on friends / family members in different households to get you a job at their workplace.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.6. Went to factories and waited outside	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.7. Knocked on factory gates and/or visited private homes and shops	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.8. Visited employment agencies	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.9. Phoned up (or visited) old employers and asked for jobs	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.10. Waited on the side of the road for jobs	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999
F.29.11. Looked on notice boards in community centres, shopping centres, shops etc.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	999

F.30. If you were offered a suitable job, would you be able to start within a week?

Yes [1] No [2]

F.31. What kinds of jobs are you looking for?

Any job	1
Cleaning/domestic work	2
Construction work	3
Gardening	4
Shop assistant/ teller	5
Factory work	6
Other (specify)	996

F.32. How much do you agree/disagree with each of the following statements

	Strongly disagree	Disagree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	Strongly agree
F.32.1. I get bored with nothing to do all day	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.2. If there were more jobs to be had, I would search for employment more actively	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.3. If I had more money, I would look for work more actively	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.4. It is not so bad being out of work because other people support me	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.5. You are nobody if you do not have a job	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.6. I feel useless and depressed because I do not have a job	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.7. Any job is better than no job	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.8. My family is much worse off as a result of my being unemployed	1	2	3	4	5
F.32.9. My family does not always have enough to eat because I am unemployed	1	2	3	4	5

F.33. Are you aware of any training programmes for the unemployed? Yes [1] No [2]

F.34. Would you be prepared to go on any of the following training programmes if they were offered free of charge in your area?

	Yes	No	Maybe
F.34.1. Basic carpentry skills?	1	2	3
F.34.2. Basic mechanic skills?	1	2	3
F.34.3. Typing and basic computing skills?	1	2	3
F.34.4. Truck driving?	1	2	3
F.34.5. Basic bookkeeping and secretarial skills?	1	2	3
F.34.6. A course on how to run a small business?	1	2	3

F.35. If you would like a training programme not listed above, please let us know what it would be .....

G. Self-Employment (i.e. non-wage income-earning activities including activities like making clothing, crafts, beer, food, etc for sale – or offering services on a contract basis)

[We now want to ask you some questions about self-employment – i.e. non-wage income-earning activities. The questions are for **all** people, employed and unemployed – even those of you who have a main job or are in full-time education, and therefore can only do this kind of work on the side]

G.1. Have you engaged in any non-wage income-earning activities during the past six months? [Probe people to make sure] Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of this module

G.2. Describe your main non-wage income-earning activity

Making clothing for sale direct to customers	1
Making clothing for sale to a factory/shop	2
Making food for sale	3
Making beer for sale	4
Making other items for sale (specify)	5
Shop-keeper	6
Running a spaza shop from your home	7
Buying fruit/vegetables, repackaging them, and reselling them on the street	8
Selling other goods on the street	9
Repairing shoes	10
Hairdressing services/ beauticians	11
Professional services (lawyer, dentist, architect, doctor etc)	12
Self-employed artisan	13
Building or repairing houses	14
Taxi owner/driver	15
Owner/driver (other transport)	16
Collecting wood/fuel	17
Herbalist/traditional healer	18
Child-minding services	19
Other services (describe)	20
Other (describe)	996

G.3. Do you do any other non-wage income earning activities? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to G.5.

G.4. If so, please describe .....

.....

G.5. Did you ever work as a wage-worker doing similar work to the work you do now? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to question G.8

G.6. When was this? [ ] (year)

G.7. Why did you stop being a wage-worker?

I wanted to become my own boss and left voluntarily	1
I was retrenched and so started working for many different firms on a contract basis	2
My employer wanted to engage my services on a contract basis rather than as a wage-worker (and I agreed)	3
My employer wanted to engage my services on a contract basis rather than as a wage-worker (and I had no choice)	4
I retired	5
Other (explain)	996

G.8. Have you done any non-wage income-earning activities in the past month? Yes [1] No [2]

→ Skip to question G.10

G.9. If no, why not?

I wasn't making any money, so I stopped	1
I became disabled/sick	2
I lost my business premises	3
My stock was stolen	4
My machinery was stolen	5
Thieves kept stealing the money I made	6
I didn't have enough money to buy stock or materials	7
I was taking a holiday and will start again soon	8
Other (explain)	996

→ Skip the rest of this module

→ Skip to G.13.

G.10. Have you done any non-wage income-earning activities in the past two-weeks? Yes [1] No [2]

G.11. Have you done any non-wage income-earning activities in the past week (seven days)? Yes [1] No [2]

G.12. Did you do any non-wage income-earning activities during the previous Saturday and/or Sunday? Yes [1] No [2]

G. 13. Please fill in the following information about earnings in a typical month:

G.13.1. Gross income (total income earned)	R
G.13.2. Labour expenses	R
G.13.3. Cost of materials	R
G.13.4. Rent, electricity, lighting etc	R
G.13.5. Taxes	R
G.13.6. Other expenses of business	R
G.13.7. Money for your own salary	R
G.13.7. Take-home profit (equal to gross income minus all expenses)	R

[If take-home profit is a negative number, check each figure with the respondent again and ask if he/she usually makes a loss.]

G.14. How many hours do you spend doing this activity in a typical week – i.e. seven day period ____ hours

G.15. Do you work from home, or do you own or rent a business premises?

I work from home	1
I rent a business premises	2
I own a business premises	3
I work from a street pavement or other public open space	4

G.16. Please indicate when you usually do this kind of work:

G.16.1. Monday to Friday during the day? Yes [1] No [2]

G.16.2. Monday to Friday during the evenings? Yes [1] No [2]

G.16.3. Over the weekend? Yes [1] No [2]

G.17. Why don't you spend more time doing these activities?

I can't afford to buy the materials/supplies	1
The extra time involved is not worth the extra money	2
There is not enough demand for my product	3
I don't have the time	4
I value my spare time/ I don't want to work more	5
I am already working as hard as possible	6
Other (explain)	996

G.18. Do you claim VAT back from the government? Yes [1] No [2]

G.19. Do you have any tools or machinery that you use in these activities? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to G.21

G.20. How much would it cost you to replace these tools and machines? R

G.21. Do you pay anyone to help you with your activities Yes 1 No 2 → Skip to G.24

G.22. If you have ten or less workers, please fill in the following details

Worker	Average hours worked per week		Monthly wage (before tax)		Taxes deducted off workers' salaries		Peodes for those people who are household members	
Worker 1	G.22.1.1		G.22.1.2	R	G.22.1.3	R	G.22.1.4	
Worker 2	G.22.2.1		G.22.2.2	R	G.22.2.3	R	G.22.2.4	
Worker 3	G.22.3.1		G.22.3.2	R	G.22.3.3	R	G.22.3.4	
Worker 4	G.22.4.1		G.22.4.2	R	G.22.4.3	R	G.22.4.4	
Worker 5	G.22.5.1		G.22.5.2	R	G.22.5.3	R	G.22.5.4	
Worker 6	G.22.6.1		G.22.6.2	R	G.22.6.3	R	G.22.6.4	
Worker 7	G 22.7.1		G.22.7.2	R	G.22.7.3	R	G.22.7.4	
Worker 8	G.22.8.1		G.22.8.2	R	G.22.8.3	R	G.22.8.4	
Worker 9	G 22 9.1		G.22.9.2	R	G.22.9.3	R	G.22.9.4	
Worker 10	G.22.10.1		G.22.10.2	R	G.22.10.3	R	G.22.10.4	

G.23. If yes and you have more than ten workers, please fill in the following:

Category of Worker	Number of workers employed in this category		Average hours worked each week by the average worker		Monthly wage (before tax) of the average worker		Taxes deducted off the average worker's wage	
General Worker	G.23.1.1		G.23.1.2		G.23.1.3	R	G.23.1.4	R
Clerical worker	G.23.2.1		G.23.2.2		G.23.2.3	R	G.23.2.4	R
Sales worker	G.23.3.1		G.23.3.2		G.23.3.3	R	G.23.3.4	R
Other (explain)	G.23.4.1		G.23.4.2		G.23.4 3	R	G.23.4.4	R
Other (explain)	G.23.5.1		G.23.5.2		G.23.5.3	R	G.23.5.4	R
Other (explain)	G.23.6.1		G.23.6.2		G.23.6.3	R	G.23.6.4	R

G.24. Does anyone help you with your activities without pay? Yes 1 No 2 → Skip to G.26

G.25. If yes, please fill in the following details

Person	Hours worked per week		Peodes for those people who are household members	
Person 1	G.25.1.1		G.25.1.2	
Person 2	G.25.2.1		G.25.2.2	
Person 3	G.25.3.1		G.25.3.2	
Person 4	G.25.4.1		G.25.4.2	

G.26. When did you first start engaging in these income-earning opportunities? (year)

G.27. What did you earn per week (after deducting taxes and expenses) when you first started? R

G.28. If you were offered a job with the same wage as your present profit, would you take the job? (Assume that you would work the same number of hours for the wage as you do now for profit)

Yes	1
No	2
It depends on the job	3
I don't know	999

G.29. What is the absolute lowest weekly take-home wage you would accept if offered a job? R

G.30. How did you learn how to do this income-earning activity?

I was taught by someone I used to help do the same thing	1
I learned on the job while employed in a similar kind of business	2
I learned on the job while employed in a different kind of business	3
I was taught by a friend	4
I was taught by a family member	5
I taught myself	6
I underwent formal training (describe)	7
Other (describe)	996

G.31. How long would it take someone to learn how to do your work and start competing with you (by doing similar income-earning activities)?

Less than a day	1
A few days	2
one week	3
1 – 4 weeks	4
1 3 months	5
3 6 months	6
6 months to a year	7
1 – 2 years	8
I don't know	999
Other (specify)	996

H. Non-Labour-Force Participants

H.1. Do you currently work for a wage (full-time or part-time)?

Yes [1] → Skip the rest of this module

No [2]

H.2. Are you currently self-employed?

Yes [1] → Skip the rest of this module

No [2]

H.3. Do you want full-time or part-time wage employment or self-employment

Yes [1] → Skip the rest of this module

No [2]

H.4. What is the reason why you do not want full-time or part-time wage employment?

I am too old	1	I am sick/ disabled	7
I am a full-time student/pupil/learner	2	It costs too much to look for work	8
I do not like the available jobs and would rather not work	3	The wages are too low, it is not worth my time working	9
I do not like working / prefer leisure (or equivalent answer)	4	I spend my time cooking and cleaning, shopping etc	10
I do domestic duties and look after children and or elderly/disabled family members	5	Other (specify)	996
I look after children (only) all the time	6		

H.5. You said you had to look after children. Would you accept a job if a creche was provided at the workplace? Yes [1] No [2]

H.6. Have you ever looked for a job? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to H.9

H.7. If yes, when was the last time you looked? [ ] (year)

H.8. What was the reason you stopped looking?

I became discouraged (I did not think I would ever find a job / Job search was pointless / There are no jobs to be had / It was a waste of time)	1
I got pregnant	2
I had family responsibilities that prevented me from looking for a job	3
I could not afford the costs of looking for work	4
I decided to go back to school /study further	5
I became disabled	6
I decided I was too old to work anymore	7
Other (specify)	996

H.9. What would persuade you to start looking for a job?

If I thought there were jobs to be had	1	When I complete my studies	5
Nothing would persuade me to start looking	2	If my health improves	6
If I could afford the costs of looking for work	4	Other (specify)	996
If I was relieved of my family/domestic duties	3		

H.10. How much do you agree/disagree with each of the following statements

	Strongly disagree	Disagree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	Strongly agree
H.10.1. I get bored with nothing to do all day	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.2. If there were more jobs to be had, I would search for employment more actively	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.3. If I had more money, I would look for work more actively	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.4. It is not so bad being out of work because other people support me	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.5. You are nobody if you do not have a job	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.6. I feel useless and depressed because I do not have a job	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.7. Any job is better than no job	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.8. My family is much worse off as a result of my being unemployed	1	2	3	4	5
H.10.9. My family does not always have enough to eat because I am unemployed	1	2	3	4	5

I. Casual Work (NB: Casual work means work that is irregular/ short-term, or any work that you do in addition to your main job, or any work except the work that you told us about in modules E and G)

[These questions are for all people – even those of you who have a main job or are self-employed or are in full-time education (and therefore can only do casual work on the side]

I.1. Have you done any casual work to earn money in the past six months? [Refer to above definition of casual work]

Yes [1] → Skip to I.6

No [2]

I.2. If no, was this because you:

Did not want casual work	1
Wanted casual work but did not look	2
Could not find casual work	3
Other(specify)	996

I.3. Would you like to do casual work occasionally to earn more money?

Yes [1]

No [2] → Skip the rest of this module

I.4. Would you accept a one-day casual job without first asking about the wage?

Yes [1]

No [2]

I.5. What is the lowest **daily** take-home wage you would be prepared to accept for a casual job?

R ____ → Skip the rest of this module

I.6. What was your main form of casual work during the past six months?

Construction work during the week	1
Working as a gardener during the week	2
Working as a gardener during the weekend	3
Other casual work over the weekend	4
Working as a casual worker in a factory	5
Working as a casual worker on a farm	6
Working as a waiter/waitress	7
Working as a paid child-minder	8
Working as a casual domestic worker	9
Other (specify)	996

I.7. How did you find this work?

Friends found me the job(s)	1
Family members found them for me	2
I knocked on doors	3
I sat on the side of the road and waited for offers	4
Other (specify)	996

I.8. What is the average amount you earn doing this kind of work? R

I.9. Is this amount:

Per hour	1
Per day	2
Per week	3
Per month	4
Other (specify)	996

I.10. Do you do casual work regularly for the same employer? Yes 1 No 2

I.11. Have you done any casual work in the past month? Yes 1 No 2

Skip to I.13

I.12. If no, was this because you:

Did not want casual work	1
Wanted casual work but did not look	2
Could not find casual work	3
Other (specify)	996

Now go to I.17

I.13. If yes, please indicate what this form of work was. [If the person did different jobs, ask what the main job was]

Construction work during the week	1
Working as a gardener during the week	2
Working as a gardener during the weekend	3
Other casual work over the weekend	4
Working as a casual worker in a factory	5
Working as a casual worker on a farm	6
Working as a waiter/waitress	7
Working as a paid child-minder	8
Working as a casual domestic worker	9
Other (specify)	996

I.14. How did you find this work

Friends found me the job(s)	1
Family members found them for me	2
I knocked on doors	3
I sat on the side of the road and waited for offers	4
Other (specify)	996

I.15. What did you earn from **all** casual work during the past month? R

I.16. How many hours did you work in casual employment in the past month? (hours)

I.17. Would you accept a one-day casual job without first asking about the wage? Yes 1 No 2

I.18. What is the lowest **daily** take-home wage you would be prepared to accept for a casual job? R

I.19. Would you like to have more casual work? Yes 1 No 2

Skip to I.21

I.20. If no, why not?

I don't have time because of domestic duties	1
I don't have time because I am in full-time education	2
I don't have time because I am in paid employment	3
I don't have time because I am self-employed	4
I don't have the energy to cope with more casual work	5
The work is too hard and the pay is bad/ don't like casual employment	6
Other (specify)	996

Go to I.22

I.21. If yes, please indicate when you would like to do this kind of work:

I.21.1. Monday to Friday during the day? Yes 1 No 2

I.21.2. Monday to Friday during the evenings? Yes 1 No 2

I.21.3. Over the weekend? Yes 1 No 2

I.22. What kind of employment would you prefer?

Full-time wage employment	1
Part-time wage employment	2
Part-time wage employment and casual employment	3
Other (specify)	996

I.23. Have you done any casual work in the past two weeks? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of the module

I.24. How many hours did you work (in casual employment) in the past two weeks? [ ] (hours)

I.25. Have you done any casual work in the past week week (seven days)? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip the rest of this module

I.26. How many hours did you work (in casual employment) during the past seven days? [ ] (hours)

I.27. Please indicate when you did this work:

I.27.1. Monday to Friday during the day? Yes [1] No [2]

I.27.2. Monday to Friday during the evenings? Yes [1] No [2]

I.27.3. Over the weekend? Yes [1] No [2]

I.28. What did you earn in total doing casual work during the past seven days? R [ ]

I.29. Have you told us about all your income earning activities in the past month? Yes [1] No [2]

I.30. If no, please tell us about the job/work and how much you earned

I.30.1. Description .....

.....

I.30.2. Monthly take-home earnings .....

.....

J. Questions about Helping Other People with their Business

J.1. Do you ever help other people with their business activities (e.g. helping in a spaza shop, helping make food to sell, helping to make clothes to sell etc.). Yes [1] No [2]

J.2. How many hours per week, on average, do you do this? [ ] (hours)

Skip the rest of the module

J.3. Is this for:

Family members in the household	1
Family members in another household	2
Friends	3
Other (specify)	996

J.4. Do you ever get money for this work? Yes [1] No [2]

If the respondent has not reported this before, go back to the Casual Work Module (Module I)

J.7. Do you ever get given food for doing this work? Yes [1] No [2]

J.8. Do you get accommodation for doing this work? Yes [1] No [2]

J.9. If you ever get any other 'in kind' payments, please tell us about them .....
.....
.....

K. Reservation Wages

K.1. If the government gave R100 a month to people without jobs, would you rather be:

Unemployed and get the R100 a month	1
Have a job paying R715 (take home) a month (and therefore not be eligible for the grant)	2
Continue earning a living the way I do now (and not be eligible for the grant)	3

K.2. If a government public works programme came to the area (perhaps to cut Port Jackson trees on the sand dunes or the mountain) offering R33 a day, would you take a few days work if you were unemployed at the time?

Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to K.4

K.3. If yes, would you work at that wage for as long as possible? Yes [1] No [2]

K.4. Imagine that an industrial park opened up nearby. Would you accept any of the following jobs at the following (pre-tax) rates of pay (if you were unemployed at the time):

K.4.1. A cleaner with a monthly wage of R1081? Yes [1] No [2]

K.4.1. A general worker with a monthly wage of R1438? Yes [1] No [2]

K. 4.1. A machine operator with a monthly wage of R1619? Yes [1] No [2]

K.5. What is the absolute lowest monthly take home wage that you would accept for any work (if you were unemployed at the time)? R

L. Savings, Borrowing and Grants and Investment Income

L.1. Do you give money to a stokvel (or gooi-gooi) each month? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.3

L.2. If yes, how much each month? R

L.3. Do you give money to a burial society each month? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.5

L.4. If yes, how much each month? R

L.5. Are your able to save money in a bank each month? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.7

L.6. If yes, how much each month (on average)? R

L.7. Do you have any other form of savings activity? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.9

L.7.1. If yes, please describe .....

.....

L.8. If yes, how much each month (on average)? R

L.9. Do you have any past savings that you are drawing on now to support yourself? [NB: Include private retirement savings] Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.11

L.10. If so, how long do you expect them to last?

Less than a month	1
1-2 months	2
3-4 months	3
5-6 months	4
7-12 months	5
1-2 years	6
Until I die	7
Other (specify) _____	996

L.11. Do you owe anyone money? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.13

L.12. If so, to whom do you owe this money?

Friends	1	Family	2
Family and Friends	3	Money lenders	4
Banks	5	Other (specify) _____	996

L.13. Please indicate if you are in receipt of any of the following grants:

Type of Grant	Yes	No		Amount		Paid every month	Paid every two months
L.13.1. State old age pension	1	2	L.13.1.1	R	L.13.1.2	3	4
L.13.2. Disability pension	1	2	L.13.2.1	R	L.13.2.2	3	4
L.13.3. Veteran's pension	1	2	L.13.3.1	R	L.13.3.2	3	4
L.13.4. Employer's pension	1	2	L.13.4.1	R	L.13.4.2	3	4
L.13.5. Workers compensation	1	2	L.13.5.1	R	L.13.5.2	3	4
L.13.6. UIF	1	2	L.13.6.1	R	L.13.6.2	3	4
L.13.7. State child support grant	1	2	L.13.7.1	R	L.13.7.2	3	4
L.13.8. Private child maintenance grant (from father of the child)	1	2	L.13.8.1	R	L.13.8.2	3	4
L.13.9. Foster care grant	1	2	L.13.9.1	R	L.13.9.2	3	4
L.13.10. Alimony (from divorced spouse)	1	2	L.13.10.1	R	L.13.10.2	3	4

L.14. Does anyone else give you money (which you don't have to pay back)? Yes [1] No [2] → Skip to L.16

L.15. If yes, how much do you get each month, and from whom?

	Code for the person giving the money (give p-code if person is in the household, otherwise lover=90, parent=91, child=92)		Amount each month
L.15.1		L.15.1.1	R
L.15.2		L.15.2.1	R
L.15.3		L.15.3.1	R

[Check that this includes all remittances – including those coming in for children]

L.16. Please indicate if you have any of the following other forms of income:

Type of Income	Yes	No		Amount each month
L.16.1. Rent	1	2	L.16.1.1	R
L.16.2. Income from financial investments	1	2	L.16.2.1	R
L.16.3. Other	1	2	L.16.3.1	R

L.16.4. If the respondent answered 'yes' to 'other' above, please specify .....

.....

M. PERCEPTIONS OF DISTRIBUTIVE JUSTICE

[I am now going to read you some statements. For each, can you tell your opinion about the statement. There are no right or wrong answers to these questions. If you don't know what you think, please give the answer 'neither agree nor disagree']

	Strongly disagree	Dis-agree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	Strongly agree
M.1. If you work hard you can get rich in South Africa today	1	2	3	4	5
M.2. It is easy for children from poor families to get a good education	1	2	3	4	5
M.3. If you get a good education, it is easy to become rich in SA now	1	2	3	4	5
M.4. People today are better off than their parents were twenty-five years ago	1	2	3	4	5
M.5. The government should ensure that all schools are equally good.	1	2	3	4	5
M.6. The government should provide better education for children from poor families to ensure that they have the same opportunities as children from richer families.	1	2	3	4	5
M.7. The value of the state old age pension should be increased.	1	2	3	4	5
M.8. The government old age pension should be increased even if it means that people like you have to pay higher taxes.	1	2	3	4	5
M.9. Many poor people are poor because they are lazy.	1	2	3	4	5
M.10. Poor people pay too much tax.	1	2	3	4	5
M.11. Taxation should be increased so that more money is available for the government to spend.	1	2	3	4	5
M.12. The government should reduce the differences in income between rich and poor people.	1	2	3	4	5
M.13. The government should provide everyone with a guaranteed basic income (like it does for old people through the old-age grant).	1	2	3	4	5
M.14. People like you pay too much tax.	1	2	3	4	5
M.15. Overall, this country is moving in the right direction	1	2	3	4	5
M.16. The government should provide free health care.	1	2	3	4	5

	Strongly disagree	Dis-agree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	Strongly agree
M.17. The government is doing a good job.	1	2	3	4	5
M.18. The government should help the unemployed.	1	2	3	4	5
M.19. Trade unions look after the interests of the unemployed	1	2	3	4	5
M.20. Employers should be allowed to hire temporary workers when their workforce is on strike.	1	2	3	4	5
M.21. Many people in this country receive much less income than they deserve.	1	2	3	4	5
M.22. Large companies have too much power in South Africa today.	1	2	3	4	5
M.23. Ordinary workers could manage companies effectively without bosses.	1	2	3	4	5
M.24. If education was improved then there would be less crime.	1	2	3	4	5
M.25. If there was less unemployment then there would be less crime	1	2	3	4	5
M.26. The government should play a bigger role in running large companies	1	2	3	4	5
M.27. The government should spend much more on education and health	1	2	3	4	5
M.28. Workers go on strike too often.	1	2	3	4	5
M.29. Workers cannot get a fair wage unless they go on strike sometimes.	1	2	3	4	5
M.30. It is bad for the economy for workers to go on strike.	1	2	3	4	5
M.31. People will not take on extra responsibilities at work unless they are paid to do it.	1	2	3	4	5
M.32. Inequality continues because it benefits the rich and the powerful.	1	2	3	4	5
M.33. Large differences in income are necessary for South Africa's prosperity.	1	2	3	4	5
M.34. The country needs more investment if the economy is to grow with a rising standard of living.	1	2	3	4	5
M.35. Allowing business to make profits is the best way to encourage investment.	1	2	3	4	5
M.36. People living with HIV/AIDS are afraid to tell other people about it.	1	2	3	4	5

Appendix 1.1 - ResOccCat

APPENDIX 1.1

```
#delimit;

/*This do file creates a variable which captures the occupations of respondents for the
  KMP survey and places them into the following occupational categories which I will refer to
  as MY CODES*/;

/* - MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;


/*THis variable combines the main wage occupation, self-employed occupation and casual
  occupation of respondents*/;
/*The categories created have to be mutually exclusive, ie. if a person has a wage job,
  this will be taken as their main occupation even if they are self-employed or/and have a
  casual job.
  To be classified self-employed the respondent has to NOT have a wage job.
  To be classified as a casual worker the respondent should NOT have a wage job OR be
  self-employed*/;
/*In other words there is an order of hierarchy where wage or self-employment takes
  precedence over casual work*/;
```

```
/*SECTION 1 - WAGE EMPLOYMENT - This section captures those respondents who are employed
                                in regular wage employment*/;
/*SECTION 2 - SELF EMPLOYMENT - This section captures those respondents who are self -
                                employed but do not have a wage job. They can however have
                                a casual job but will be allocated a occupational category
                                according to their self-employed occupation*/;
/*SECTION 3 - CASUAL WORK     - This section covers those respondents who do not have a wage
                                job and who are not self-employed.*/;

/*SECTION 4 - THE COMBINATION OF WAGE, SELF-EMPLOYED AND CASUAL OCCUPATIONAL CATEGORIES*/;

/*Please note that the recodes for this entire do file includes those who are at school. This is
  to allow for the addition or subtraction of respondents at school. For analysis, school goers
  can be excluded using question a4 == 2.*/;




/*SECTION 1 - WAGE EMPLOYMENT*/;

/*This section utilizes the variable soce6 from the KMP dataset which has coded question e6
  according to SOC. My categories are derived from the SOC as explained above.*/;

gen ResWageOcc=.;

label var ResWageOcc "Respondent's Wage Employment occupational categories CLZ codes";

replace ResWageOcc = 1 if soce6 >= 1000 & soce6 <2000  /*Legislators, senior officials and
                                                         managers*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 2 if soce6 >= 2000 & soce6 <3000  /*Professionals*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 3 if soce6 >= 3000 & soce6 <4000  /*Technicians and associate
                                                         professionals*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 4 if soce6 >= 4000 & soce6 <5000  /*Clerks*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 5 if soce6 >= 5000 & soce6 <6000  /*Service workers and shop and market
                                                         sales workers*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 6 if soce6 >= 6000 & soce6 <8000  /*Skilled agricultural and fishery
                                                         workers - Craft and related trades
                                                         workers*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 7 if soce6 >= 8000 & soce6 <9000  /*Plant and machinery operators and
                                                         assemblers*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 8 if soce6 >= 9000 & soce6 <10000 /*Elementary occupations*/;
replace ResWageOcc = 11 if soce6 == 850                /*Not adequately defined*/;
```

```
/*SECTION 2 - SELF EMPLOYMENT*/;

/*This section utilizes the variables g2recode g2items g2services g2other from the KMP dataset.
  g2recode   - recode of g2. Places respondents into categories refer to question g2 in
               questionnaire.
  g2items    - describe your main non-wage income-earning activity-other items specify?
  g2services - describe your main non-wage income-earning activity-other services describe?
  g2other    - describe your main non-wage income-earning activity-other describe?

  The aim is to classify the self-employed into my occupational categories if they do not have
  a wage job.*/;

/*Creating a table for the Self Employed who do not have wage jobs produces the following:
  tab g2recode for those without wage employment (e1==2) gives us 250 respondents falling into
  the following categories:


tab  g2recode if e1==2

                           recode of g2 |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.     My Codes
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
1. made clothing for sale direct to cus |         18        7.20        7.20        6
2. made clothing for sale to a factory/ |          2        0.80        8.00        6
                  3. made food for sale |         31       12.40       20.40       10
                  4. made beer for sale |         22        8.80       29.20       10
 5. made other items for sale (specify) |          2        0.80       30.00    see below
                        6. shop-keeper |          6        2.40       32.40        4
     7. ran a spaza shop from your home |         29       11.60       44.00        9
8. bought fruit/vegetables, reselling t |         15        6.00       50.00       10
      9. sold other goods on the street |         52       20.80       70.80       10
 11. hairdressing services/ beauticians |         12        4.80       75.60        5
12. professional services (lawyer, dent |          3        1.20       76.80        2
             13. self-employed artisan |          8        3.20       80.00        6
       14. building or repairing houses |          7        2.80       82.80        6
                 15. taxi owner-driver |          1        0.40       83.20        1
       18. herbalist/traditional healer |          5        2.00       85.20        3
            19. child-minding services |          3        1.20       86.40        8
          20. other services (describe) |          5        2.00       88.40    see below
                           996. other |         29       11.60      100.00    see below
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                 Total |        250      100.00
*/;
```

```
/*First problem - there are those respondents (29) who replied OTHER (category 996) for question
                  g2 so we have to look at g2recode versus g2other to allocate these people to
                  my categories. Remember that we have to stipulate e1==2 for all these
                  examinations because we are creating mutually exclusive categories as
                  explained above*/;

/*
tab  g2other  g2recode if g2recode==996 & e1==2,m
```

g.2. describe your main non-wage income-earning activity - other describe?	recode of g2 996. othe	Total	My Codes	
	3	3	Missing	
Creche - Educare	1	1	9	
ENGINEERING SALES	1	1	5	
MEAT SALES FROM HOME	1	1	10	
PREACHER	1	1	10	earns R100 per month
SANGOMA	1	1	3	SOC code 3241
SELLING CLOTHES	2	2	10	
SELLING FOOD HAMPERS	1	1	10	
SELLING MILK	1	1	10	
SELLING OLD CLOTHES	1	1	10	
SELLING THINGS AT SCH	1	1	10	SCHOOL
SELLS MEALIES	1	1	10	
Selling Pork	1	1	10	
Selling liquor	1	1	10	
Shebeen	1	1	9	
Sold meat	1	1	10	
collecting and seliin	1	1	10	seliing empty boxes
owning spazashop sell	1	1	9	selling groceries fruitt and veg
repairing electricity	1	1	10	earns R200 per month
running a tarven from	1	1	9	from home
sell beer and cooldri	1	1	10	cooldrinks
sell washing baisins	1	1	10	
shebeen	1	1	9	
soft drinks and kitch	1	1	10	kitchen utensils
spazashop selling gro	1	1	9	groceries and veg
sweets and cakes in s	1	1	10	in schools
Total	29	29		

```
*/;
```

```
/*From the above table it can be seen that I could not classify 3 respondents who are
  missing*/;

/*Second problem - there are those respondents (2) who answered MAKING OTHER ITEMS FOR SALE
                   SPECIFY (category 5) for question g2. We therefore have to examine g2recode
                   versus g2items much the same as we did above.*/;

/*
tab  g2items if g2recode == 5 & e1==2, m

   g.2. describe your main |
   non-wage income-earning |
      activity-other items |
                  specify? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
---------------------------+-----------------------------------
                           |          2      100.00      100.00
---------------------------+-----------------------------------
                     Total |          2      100.00
There were 2 people who replied that they made other items and both are missing as can be seen
in the above table.*/

/*Third problem - there are those respondents (5) who answered OTHER SERVICES (category 20) for
                  question g2. We therefore have to examine g2recode versus g2services much like
                  above.*/;

/*
tab  g2services if g2recode == 20 & e1==2,m

      g.2. describe your main non-wage |
income-earning activity-other services |
                            describe |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.  My Codes
-------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                     |          1       20.00       20.00
                             PLUMBER |          1       20.00       40.00     6
                         TAXI REPAIR |          1       20.00       60.00       6
                       electtric work |          1       20.00       80.00       6
                     funeral services |          1       20.00      100.00     5
-------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                Total |          5      100.00
As can be seen in the table above there were 5 respondents who fall into this category of which
1 is missing. I have categorised 4.*/;

/*The next step is to bring all these variables together. The total we are working with is 250.
  This figure we get from the first table tab  g2recode if e1==2. Of this:

  2 respondents = made other items for sale (specify)
```

```
  5 respondents = other services (describe)
 29 respondents = other

  Of which

  2 respondents = made other items for sale (specify) - 2 MISSING
  5 respondents = other services (describe)           - 4 HAVE BEEN CLASSIFIED, 1 MISSING
 29 respondents = other                               - 26 HAVE BEEN CLASSIFIED, 3 MISSING

This means that once combined our new total will be 250 - 6 missing = 244*/;


/*This next section is the creation of the self employment variable which categorizes all
  respondents into my occupational categories described above.*/;

gen ResSelfOcc = .;

label var ResSelfOcc "Respondent's Self Employment occupational categories MY CODES";

replace ResSelfOcc = 1 if g2recode == 15 & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 2 if g2recode == 12 & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 3 if (g2recode == 18 | g2other == "SANGOMA") & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 4 if g2recode == 6 & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 5 if (g2recode == 11 | g2other == "ENGINEERING SALES" |
                          g2services == "funeral services") & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 6 if (g2recode == 1 | g2recode == 2 | g2recode == 13 | g2recode == 14 |
                          g2services == "PLUMBER" |
                                  g2services == "TAXI REPAIR" |
                                  g2services == "electtric work")
                                  & e1 == 2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 8 if g2recode == 19 & e1 ==2;
replace ResSelfOcc = 5 if (g2recode == 7 |
                          g2other == "Creche - Educare" |
                          g2other == "Shebeen" |
                          g2other == "owning spazashop selling groceries fruitt and veg" |
                          g2other == "running a tarven from home" |
                          g2other == "shebeen" |
                          g2other == "spazashop selling groceries and veg")
                          & e1 == 2;
/*These were all 9's but after consultation with Owen it was decided this subgroup was too small
  hence they were dissolved into other occupational categories, and all happen to fal into 5*/;

replace ResSelfOcc = 10 if (g2recode == 3 | g2recode == 4 | g2recode == 8 | g2recode == 9 |
                           g2other == "MEAT SALES FROM HOME" |
                                   g2other == "PREACHER" |
                           g2other == "SELLING CLOTHES" |
```

```
g2other == "SELLING FOOD HAMPERS" |
g2other == "SELLING MILK" |
g2other == "SELLING OLD CLOTHES" |
g2other == "SELLING THINGS AT SCHOOL" |
g2other == "SELLS MEALIES" |
g2other == "Selling Pork" |
g2other == "Selling liquor" |
g2other == "Sold meat" |
g2other == "collecting and seliing empty boxes" |
        g2other == "repairing electricity goods" |
g2other == "sell beer and cooldrinks" |
g2other == "sell washing baisins" |
g2other == "soft drinks and kitchen utensils" |
g2other == "sweets and cakes in schools")
& e1 == 2;
```

```
/*SECTION 3 - CASUAL EMPLOYMENT */;

/*This section utilizes the variables i6 and i6other from KMP dataset.*/;

/*Tabulating i6 but excluding wage and self employed workers produces the following:
  Please note we are including school goers for now, they can be excluded at a later time.

tab  i6 if e1==2 & g1==2 & i1==1 /*reason for i1==1 is because we only want those people who
                                   said that they had done casual work in the past six months*/;
```

i.6. what was your main form of casual job for the last six months?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.	MY CODES
1	52	21.67	21.67	8
2	11	4.58	26.25	8
3	2	0.83	27.08	8
4	4	1.67	28.75	8
5	35	14.58	43.33	8
6	3	1.25	44.58	8
7	4	1.67	46.25	5
8	1	0.42	46.67	8
9	32	13.33	60.00	8

```
       996 |         96       40.00      100.00   See below
-----------+-----------------------------------
     Total |        240      100.00

*/;


/*

tab i6other i6 if i6==996 & e1==2 & g1==2 & i1==1,m
```

i.6. what was your main form of casual job for the last six months -other specif	i.6. what was your main form of casual job for the last six months? 996	Total
	4	4
BARMAN	1	1
BARTENDER	1	1
Baking breads and cak	1	1
Bricklayer	1	1
CASHIER	1	1
CASUAL MACHINE OPERAT	1	1
CLEANER	1	1
COMMISSION ON SALE OF	1	1
COMPUTER ASSISTANT	1	1
CONNECTING PLUGS AND	1	1
CREDIT CONTROLLER	1	1
Cashier	1	1
Construction work	1	1
DOMESTIC	2	2
Diving	1	1
ELECTRONIC WORK	1	1
FENCING YARDS	1	1
FURNITURE STORE	1	1
Fishing	1	1
HAIR SALON	1	1
HAIR WASHER - SALON	1	1
IEC REGISTRATION	1	1
INSTALLAIR	1	1
INVIGELATOR	1	1

Insurance company - f	1	1	
Maintenance - repaire	1	1	
Military Protection	1	1	
PAINTER	1	1	
PETROL ATTENDANT	1	1	
PREPARE ROOTIS AND SA	1	1	
PRINTING	1	1	
PRINTING, MAKING BEAU	1	1	
Petrol attendant	1	1	
Phone operation in a	1	1	
REPAIR OF ELECTRICAL	1	1	
SHE DID FILING	1	1	
SHOP KEEPER	1	1	
SHOPN ASSISTANT	1	1	
SHOPRITE: DISPATCHING	1	1	
SPAZA STOCKING	1	1	
SURGERY - CLEANER	1	1	
Security	1	1	
Shoprite employee	1	1	
TAXI DRIVER	1	1	
TEACHING	1	1	
TRUCK DRIVING	1	1	
Taxi Driver	1	1	
Taxi driver	1	1	
WAREHOUSE SALES ASSIS	1	1	
WATERPROOFING	1	1	
WORKED IN A SPAZA SHO	1	1	
WORKING IN A RESTAURA	1	1	
Working as a casual w	1	1	
assisting a freelance	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
cabinet making	1	1	
car wash	1	1	
car wash at nyanga	1	1	
carpentry	1	1	
casual during he week	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
cleaner	1	1	
cleaner in a restuara	1	1	
clothing	1	1	
election helper	1	1	
ffamily business, se;	1	1	
furniture facttory ov	1	1	
gardener during the w	1	1	
helping friend in the	1	1	
invigilator at school	1	1	
painting	2	2	
painting during week	1	1	

petrol attendant	1	1	
pettrol attender	1	1	
postal services	1	1	
receptionist	1	1	
shop assistant	3	3	
shop helper	1	1	
street for someone	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
sun carriers	1	1	
supervisor	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
truck driver	1	1	
truck driver, cape ti	1	1	
worked at Ratanga jun	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
working as a casual g	1	1	
working at the harbou	1	1	SHOULD BE MISSING
working for contractt	1	1	
working in a furnitur	1	1	
working in a spaza sh	1	1	
working in butchery o	1	1	
Total	96	96	

*/;

/*As can be seen from the above table 96 respondents said they did other casual work and
  described it but of these 4 are missingand an additional 6 I have classified as missing
  because not enough detail to allocate them to a category.*/;

/*This means that for casual workers we are working with a total of:

  240 - 4 missing - 6 missing (as classified by me) = 230*/;

/*This section creates a new variable for the casual employed and assigns them occupational
  categories according to MY CODES.*/;

```
gen ResCasOcc = .;

label var ResCasOcc "Respondent's Casual Employment occupational categories My Codes";

replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6 == 7 & e1 == 2 & g1 == 2 & i1 == 1;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if (i6 == 1 |i6 == 2 |i6 == 3 |i6 == 4 |i6 == 5 |i6 == 6 |i6 == 8 |i6 == 9)
                         & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2 & i1 == 1;


replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "BARMAN" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "BARTENDER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "Baking breads and cakes" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
```

```
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "Bricklayer" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "CASHIER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "CASUAL MACHINE OPERATOR - LABEL MANUFACTURER" & e1 ==2
                    & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "CLEANER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "COMMISSION ON SALE OF PRODUCTS" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "COMPUTER ASSISTANT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "CONNECTING PLUGS AND FITTINGS" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "CREDIT CONTROLLER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "Cashier" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "Construction work" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "DOMESTIC" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "Diving" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "ELECTRONIC WORK" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "FENCING YARDS" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "FURNITURE STORE" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "Fishing" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "HAIR SALON" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "HAIR WASHER - SALON" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "IEC REGISTRATION" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "INSTALLAIR" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "INVIGELATOR" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "Insurance company - filing clerk" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "Maintenance - repaired things" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Military Protection" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "PAINTER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "PETROL ATTENDANT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "PREPARE ROOTIS AND SALOMIS" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "PRINTING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "PRINTING, MAKING BEAUTY PRODUCTS" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Petrol attendant" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Phone operation in a container" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "REPAIR OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "SHE DID FILING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "SHOP KEEPER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "SHOPN ASSISTANT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "SHOPRITE: DISPATCHING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "SPAZA STOCKING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "SURGERY - CLEANER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Security" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Shoprite employee" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "TAXI DRIVER" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 2 if i6other == "TEACHING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "TRUCK DRIVING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "Taxi Driver" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "Taxi driver" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
```

```
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "WAREHOUSE SALES ASSISTANT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "WATERPROOFING" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "WORKED IN A SPAZA SHOP" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "WORKING IN A RESTAURANT" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "Working as a casual worker in a shop." & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "cabinet making" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "car wash" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "car wash at nyanga" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "carpentry" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "cleaner" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "cleaner in a restuarant" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "clothing" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "election helper" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "ffamily business, se;; food and drinks" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "furniture facttory over weekends" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "gardener during the week" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "helping friend in the spaza shop" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "invigilator at school for matric exams" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "painting" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "painting during week" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "petrol attendant" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "pettrol attender" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 4 if i6other == "postal services" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "receptionist" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "shop assistant" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "shop helper" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "sun carriers" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "truck driver" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 7 if i6other == "truck driver, cape times" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 8 if i6other == "working as a casual general cleaner" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 6 if i6other == "working for contracttor filling tiles" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "working in a furniture shop" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "working in a spaza shop" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;
replace ResCasOcc = 5 if i6other == "working in butchery over vacation" & e1 ==2 & g1 == 2;



/*SECTION 4 - COMBINING ALL THE ABOVE OCCUPATIONAL CATEGORIZATIONS*/;

/*This section will combine ResWagOcc, ResSelfOcc and ResCasOcc into one variable.*/;

gen ResOccCat = .;
label var ResOccCat "Respondent's Occupational Category My Codes";

replace ResOccCat =  1 if ResWageOcc ==  1 | ResSelfOcc ==  1 | ResCasOcc ==  1;
```

Appendix 1_1 ResOccCat

```
replace ResOccCat =  2 if ResWageOcc ==  2 | ResSelfOcc ==  2 | ResCasOcc ==  2;
replace ResOccCat =  3 if ResWageOcc ==  3 | ResSelfOcc ==  3 | ResCasOcc ==  3;
replace ResOccCat =  4 if ResWageOcc ==  4 | ResSelfOcc ==  4 | ResCasOcc ==  4;
replace ResOccCat =  5 if ResWageOcc ==  5 | ResSelfOcc ==  5 | ResCasOcc ==  5;
replace ResOccCat =  6 if ResWageOcc ==  6 | ResSelfOcc ==  6 | ResCasOcc ==  6;
replace ResOccCat =  7 if ResWageOcc ==  7 | ResSelfOcc ==  7 | ResCasOcc ==  7;
replace ResOccCat =  8 if ResWageOcc ==  8 | ResSelfOcc ==  8 | ResCasOcc ==  8;
replace ResOccCat =  9 if ResWageOcc ==  9 | ResSelfOcc ==  9 | ResCasOcc ==  9;
replace ResOccCat = 10 if ResWageOcc == 10 | ResSelfOcc == 10 | ResCasOcc == 10;
replace ResOccCat = 11 if ResWageOcc == 11 | ResSelfOcc == 11 | ResCasOcc == 11;
```

Appendix 1.2 - HhhRegWaq

APPENDIX 1.2

```
#delimit;

/*This do file is a partial resolution of the occupational categories of the household
  head and refers to the section on intergenerational mobility. This file will identify
  only those household heads who had regular wage and place them into MY CODES
 (occupational categories)*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                           830 - Never Employed
                                           850 - Not adequately defined
                                           996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                 1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The next table gives a breakdown of the type of employemnt the HHH was involved in:

tab c5,m

  C.5. Most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
   head do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
```

1	1,646	62.25	62.25	Regular wage
2	52	1.97	64.22	Casual worker
3	165	6.24	70.46	Self-employed
4	71	2.69	73.15	Unemployed and looking for a job
5	70	2.65	75.79	Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking
6	325	12.29	88.09	Not working and not looking
7	137	5.18	93.27	Retired
999	25	0.95	94.21	I don't know
.	153	5.79	100.00	
Total	2,644	100.00		

As can be seen I will be working with the total of 1646*/;

/*Variable c6_1soc in the data set has classified the responses for question c6.1 into
the SOC codes. Tabulating this gives the following table:

tab c6_1soc

soc codes for question c6.1 if c5==1	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
820. unemployed	2	0.12	0.12
850. not adequately defined	435	26.43	26.55
1120. provincial administrator	1	0.06	26.61
1130. village chief	1	0.06	26.67
1221. mine foreman	6	0.36	27.04
1222. foreman,manufacturing	1	0.06	27.10
1223. manager, building & construction	4	0.24	27.34
1224. manager, trade (including supervi	4	0.24	27.58
1226. postmaster	1	0.06	27.64
1229. dean of university & manager/fore	3	0.18	27.83
1314. shopkeeper/owner, supervisor	6	0.36	28.19
1390. manager, city council	1	0.06	28.25
2147. engineer, mining	1	0.06	28.31
2148. surveyor	1	0.06	28.37
2230. nurse	18	1.09	29.47
2310. teacher	26	1.58	31.04
2444. translator	1	0.06	31.11
2453. singer/vocalist	1	0.06	31.17
2460. priest/minister	1	0.06	31.23
3131. sound technician	1	0.06	31.29
3142. ship's captain	2	0.12	31.41
3152. quantity controller/inspector	1	0.06	31.47
3412. insurance reprentative	2	0.12	31.59
3414. travel consultant, organizer	2	0.12	31.71
3415. sales representative	1	0.06	31.77

3416. buyer/distributor	2	0.12	31.90
3431. personal assistant/administrative	1	0.06	31.96
3444. inspector of licences	1	0.06	32.02
3460. social/community worker	1	0.06	32.08
3472. radio & tv announcer	1	0.06	32.14
4122. clerk, credit/finance	1	0.06	32.20
4131. clerk, stockroom, storeroom, ware	6	0.36	32.56
4132. clerk, order	1	0.06	32.62
4133. inspector, road transport	2	0.12	32.75
4141. clerk, filing	10	0.61	33.35
4142. clerk, mail/postman	5	0.30	33.66
4190. timekeeper	2	0.12	33.78
4211. cashier	4	0.24	34.02
4215. debt collector/credit controller	1	0.06	34.08
4223. telephonist	1	0.06	34.14
5112. conductor/bus or train	1	0.06	34.20
5121. housekeeper	2	0.12	34.33
5122. chef/cook/griller	28	1.70	36.03
5123. waiter/bartender	9	0.55	36.57
5131. traffic officer	1	0.06	36.63
5132. porter	1	0.06	36.70
5141. hairdresser	1	0.06	36.76
5162. police officer	16	0.97	37.73
5163. prison warder/guard	2	0.12	37.85
5169. security guard	26	1.58	39.43
5220. salesperson/petrol attendant	28	1.70	41.13
5300. soldier	6	0.36	41.49
6111. subsistence farmer	3	0.18	41.68
6112. harvester, pruner, plantation wor	3	0.18	41.86
6113. gardener/groundsman	9	0.55	42.41
6121. shepherd/herdsman	8	0.49	42.89
6129. gamekeeper/ranger	2	0.12	43.01
6141. tree feller/logger	4	0.24	43.26
6152. fisherman	12	0.73	43.99
7111. miner/quarryman	90	5.47	49.45
7122. bricklayer/paver	26	1.58	51.03
7124. carpenter	17	1.03	52.07
7129. builder	3	0.18	52.25
7132. tiler/carpet fitter	1	0.06	52.31
7133. plasterer	1	0.06	52.37
7134. installation worker	1	0.06	52.43
7135. glazier	1	0.06	52.49
7136. plumber	7	0.43	52.92
7137. electrician	2	0.12	53.04
7141. painter	22	1.34	54.37
7212. welder/boilermaker	7	0.43	54.80

7213. sheetmetal worker	1	0.06	54.86
7215. rigger (ship)	3	0.18	55.04
7223. turner	3	0.18	55.22
7224. grinder/metal polisher	1	0.06	55.29
7231. mechanic/panelbeater	12	0.73	56.01
7241. repairer, electrical equipment	4	0.24	56.26
7324. spraypainter	4	0.24	56.50
7331. brickmaker	5	0.30	56.80
7341. printer	2	0.12	56.93
7411. butcher/cutter	13	0.79	57.72
7412. baker/confectioner	7	0.43	58.14
7413. icecream maker	1	0.06	58.20
7422. cabinet maker	7	0.43	58.63
7432. knitter/weaver	1	0.06	58.69
7433. dressmaker/tailor	3	0.18	58.87
7435. garment cutter/sorter	3	0.18	59.05
7436. sail/tent maker	1	0.06	59.11
7437. upholsterer	2	0.12	59.23
7442. shoemaker	6	0.36	59.60
8131. machinist, glass products	3	0.18	59.78
8251. machinist, printing	4	0.24	60.02
8263. machinist, clothing & textiles	14	0.85	60.87
8274. machinist, baking/food	1	0.06	60.94
8278. machinist, brewing/spirits	2	0.12	61.06
8312. flagman & related workers	5	0.30	61.36
8322. driver/taxi, ambulance, car	4	0.24	61.60
8323. bus driver	12	0.73	62.33
8324. truck driver	81	4.92	67.25
8331. tractor driver	13	0.79	68.04
8333. crane/forklift driver	4	0.24	68.29
8340. sailor/boatman	3	0.18	68.47
9131. domestic worker in private home	145	8.81	77.28
9132. cleaner	63	3.83	81.11
9133. launderer	10	0.61	81.71
9141. building caretaker/janitor	3	0.18	81.90
9142. cleaner, vehicle	2	0.12	82.02
9151. delivery assistant	17	1.03	83.05
9152. attendant	4	0.24	83.29
9153. guard, gallery or museum/meter re	1	0.06	83.35
9211. farmhand/labourer	59	3.58	86.94
9312. general worker/labourer/handyman	95	5.77	92.71
9313. general worker/labourer construct	97	5.89	98.60
9322. packer	18	1.09	99.70
9333. docker/stevedore	5	0.30	100.00
Total	1646	100.00	

```
This tables shows 2 responses as unemployed and 435 as not adequately defined. Out of the
435 responses not adequately defined I have classified 70 responses into occupational
categories based on Owen's recommendations and the aims of this research.

The figures I will be working with is thus:

For category 11 MY CODES (no occupational data) 435 - 70 (who I have classified) = 365 responses
+ 2 responses (unemployed) = 367
For all the rest 1279 responses

*/;

/*VARIABLE CREATION*/;

gen HhhRegWag = c6_1soc;

label var HhhRegWag "hhh regular wage occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhRegWag = 1  if c6_1soc >= 1000 & c6_1soc <2000;
replace HhhRegWag = 2  if (c6_1soc >= 2000 & c6_1soc <3000) |
                          c6_1 == "engineer" |
                          c6_1 == "ENGINEER - CAPE TOWN CITY COUNCIL";
replace HhhRegWag = 3  if (c6_1soc >= 3000 & c6_1soc <4000) |
                          c6_1 == "defence force" |
                          c6_1 == "PA";
replace HhhRegWag = 4  if (c6_1soc >= 4000 & c6_1soc <5000) |
                          c6_1 == "ADMINISTRATOR" |
                          c6_1 == "Financial assistant" |
                          c6_1 == "STEEL CO. - ADMINISTRATOR";
replace HhhRegWag = 5  if (c6_1soc >= 5000 & c6_1soc <6000) |
                          c6_1 == "bellville-hardware,building suppleis" |
                          c6_1 == "dion" |
                          c6_1 == "Floor Manager" |
                          c6_1 == "funeral parlour" |
                          c6_1 == "funeral services" |
                          c6_1 == "furniture shop" |
                          c6_1 == "he was working att pep stores att butterworth" |
                          c6_1 == "supermarket" |
                          c6_1 == "supermarket in the location";
replace HhhRegWag = 6  if (c6_1soc >= 6000 & c6_1soc <8000) |
                          c6_1 == "artisan";
replace HhhRegWag = 7  if (c6_1soc >= 8000 & c6_1soc <9000) |
                          c6_1 == "an operator" |
                          c6_1 == "decker" |
                          c6_1 == "FACTORY - MACHINE OPERATOR" |
```

```
                          c6_1 == "foreman" |
                          c6_1 == "GUILOTIENER - CUTS PLATES" |
                          c6_1 == "he was a bus driver" |
                          c6_1 == "he was a forman" |
                          c6_1 == "He worked with car parts.  Making car rims.";
replace HhhRegWag = 7  if c6_1 == "insttalling tttelecommunicattion poles" |
                          c6_1 == "join operator of bags" |
                          c6_1 == "machine operaor" |
                          c6_1 == "MACHINE OPERATOR" |
                          c6_1 == "Machine operator" |
                          c6_1 == "machine operator" |
                          c6_1 == "MACHINIST" |
                          c6_1 == "machinist";
replace HhhRegWag = 7  if c6_1 == "Machinist in a factory" |
                          c6_1 == "make rails for shoes and dress" |
                          c6_1 == "mechanical operator" |
                          c6_1 == "operating machines" |
                          c6_1 == "railway, repairs&maintanance" |
                          c6_1 == "railways repairing trains" |
                          c6_1 == "repairs" |
                          c6_1 == "Suitcase company, fixing handles" |
                          c6_1 == "they made railway line,he comed from that" |
                          c6_1 == "worked asa machine operator" |
                          c6_1 == "WORKING IN A FACTORY AS A MACHINIST";
replace HhhRegWag = 8  if (c6_1soc >= 9000 & c6_1soc <10000) |
                          c6_1 == "ASBESTOSIS WORKER" |
                          c6_1 == "builder" |
                          c6_1 == "CHICKEN FARM" |
                          c6_1 == "COUNCIL WORKER" |
                          c6_1 == "council worker" |
                          c6_1 == "digging hole" |
                          c6_1 == "east londonmunicipaliy worker" |
                          c6_1 == "eastt london municipality worker" |
                          c6_1 == "Fixing pipes" |
                          c6_1 == "he was delivering goods by trucks, but not as a driver" |
                          c6_1 == "he was working in railway,he was filling in the coal" |
                          c6_1 == "RAILWAY WORKER" |
                          c6_1 == "REFUSE SERVICES" |
                          c6_1 == "SHIP WORKER";
replace HhhRegWag = 8  if hhid == 434 & pcode == 2 /* this is the only way stata recognises
                                                      "he worked ina butchery as an ordinary worker
                                                      who looked after tthe business"*/;
replace HhhRegWag = 11 if c6_1soc == 820 | c6_1soc == 830;
replace HhhRegWag = 11 if HhhRegWag == 850;
```

Appendix 1.3 - HhhSelfOcc

APPENDIX 1.3

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the respondents' Household head who had a self-employed occupational
  category and places them into MY CODES.*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                           830 - Never Employed
                                           850 - Not adequately defined
                                           996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                 1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The variables to be examined are,  c5, c8, c8other, c8recode.*/;

/*
tab c5,m

  C.5. Most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
   head do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
          1 |      1,646       62.25       62.25  Regular wage
```

2	52	1.97	64.22	Casual worker
3	165	6.24	70.46	Self-employed
4	71	2.69	73.15	Unemployed and looking for a job
5	70	2.65	75.79	Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking
6	325	12.29	88.09	Not working and not looking
7	137	5.18	93.27	Retired
999	25	0.95	94.21	I don't know
.	153	5.79	100.00	
Total	2,644	100.00		

The above table shows us that 165 respondents said their hhh was Self employed.

```
tab  c8 if c5==3,m
```

c.8. if head self-employed - what kind of self-employment was it?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
1	31	18.79	18.79
2	18	10.91	29.70
3	30	18.18	47.88
996	50	30.30	78.18
.	36	21.82	100.00
Total	165	100.00	

The above table shows that 36 of these responses are missing, no occupational data.
Of the 50 that are coded as other, 2 are missing (they did not give an other specify for variable c8other. This is what the following table shows.
The total I will thus be working with is 165 - 36 - 2 = 127

This means for the other category I will have 48 responses to alloctae codes to and I can use the following table as well to find these 48. AS can be seen there are 2 responses that were placed into other but they are actually already recorded in the precoded categories of variable c8. These two responses are:

SUBCONTRACTOR - SHOPFITTING
selling crops around the community

```
tab c8other c8 if c5==3,m
```

c.8. if head self-employed - what kind of self-employment was it -other specify?	c.8. if head self-employed - what kind of self-employment was it? 1	2	3	996	Total
	31	17	29	2	115
BRICKLAYER	0	0	0	1	1
BUILDING HOUSES	0	0	0	1	1
CARPENTRY	0	0	0	1	1
CONSTRUCTION	0	0	0	1	1
CONTRACT WORKER - CUT	0	0	0	1	1
Doing chicken project	0	0	0	1	1
Flower seller	0	0	0	1	1
HERBALIST	0	0	0	1	1
Herbalist	0	0	0	1	1
MECHANIC	0	0	0	1	1
My mother was selling	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING CLOTHES	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING CLOTHES AND V	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING MEAT	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING PELTS	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING SOUR MILK AND	0	0	0	1	1
SEWING AND SELLING CL	0	0	0	1	1
SEWING CLOTHES AND SE	0	0	0	1	1
SUBCONTRACTOR - SHOPF	0	0	1	0	1
Selling Vegetables	0	0	0	1	1
Selling food for scho	0	0	0	1	1
Selling meat	0	0	0	1	1
Sewing clothes	0	0	0	1	1
TAILOR	0	0	0	1	1
TAXI OWNER/DRIVER	0	0	0	1	1
Taxi Owner	0	0	0	1	1
Taxi owner	0	0	0	1	1
Traditional Healer	0	0	0	1	1
UPHOLSTERING	0	0	0	1	1
bought and sold furni	0	0	0	1	1
brewing african beer	0	0	0	1	1
fields maize	0	0	0	1	1
long distance drive	0	0	0	1	1
made grass brooms	0	0	0	1	1
making clothes	0	0	0	1	1
ploughed his fields o	0	0	0	1	1

	Appendix 1_3 HhhSelfOcc				
selling crops around	0	1	0	0	1
selling fruit	0	0	0	1	1
selling fruits and sw	0	0	0	1	1
selling liquor	0	0	0	1	1
sewing	0	0	0	1	1
sewing clothes and se	0	0	0	1	1
shoemaker	0	0	0	1	1
sold beer	0	0	0	1	1
sold fish and wood	0	0	0	1	1
spaza shop	0	0	0	1	1
tailor	0	0	0	1	1
taxi owner	0	0	0	2	2
undertaker business	0	0	0	1	1
Total	31	18	30	50	165

c.8. if head self-employed - what kind of self-employment was it -other specify?	c.8. if head self-employed - what kind of self-employment was it? .	Total
	36	115
BRICKLAYER	0	1
BUILDING HOUSES	0	1
CARPENTRY	0	1
CONSTRUCTION	0	1
CONTRACT WORKER - CUT	0	1
Doing chicken project	0	1
Flower seller	0	1
HERBALIST	0	1
Herbalist	0	1
MECHANIC	0	1
My mother was selling	0	1
SELLING CLOTHES	0	1
SELLING CLOTHES AND V	0	1
SELLING MEAT	0	1
SELLING PELTS	0	1
SELLING SOUR MILK AND	0	1
SEWING AND SELLING CL	0	1
SEWING CLOTHES AND SE	0	1
SUBCONTRACTOR - SHOPF	0	1

Selling Vegetables	0	1
Selling food for scho	0	1
Selling meat	0	1
Sewing clothes	0	1
TAILOR	0	1
TAXI OWNER/DRIVER	0	1
Taxi Owner	0	1
Taxi owner	0	1
Traditional Healer	0	1
UPHOLSTERING	0	1
bought and sold furni	0	1
brewing african beer	0	1
fields maize	0	1
long distance drive	0	1
made grass brooms	0	1
making clothes	0	1
ploughed his fields o	0	1
selling crops around	0	1
selling fruit	0	1
selling fruits and sw	0	1
selling liquor	0	1
sewing	0	1
sewing clothes and se	0	1
shoemaker	0	1
sold beer	0	1
sold fish and wood	0	1
spaza shop	0	1
tailor	0	1
taxi owner	0	2
undertaker business	0	1
Total	36	165

This list shows me that of the 18 responses that said the hhh was farmer, 1 response put it into other, this is a mistake so I should not consider this other answer when coding.

*/;

/*The variable c8 for self employed has been used because the codes have been recategorized
  according to MY CODES*/;

```
gen HhhSelfOcc =.;
label var HhhSelfOcc "hhh self-employed occ cats MY CODES";

replace HhhSelfOcc = 5 if c8 == 1 & c5 == 3  /*This makes traders = Service workers and shop
```

```
                                                Appendix 1_3 HhhSelfOcc
                                                and market sales workers*/;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6 if c8 == 2 & c5 == 3  /*This makes farmers = Skilled agricultural &
                                                Fishery workers*/;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6 if c8 == 3 & c5 == 3  /*This makes self-employed artisans = craft and
                                                related trades workers*/;

/*This next section takes the 50 respondents who described the HHH occupation under other and
  puts it into MY CODES*/;

replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "BRICKLAYER" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "BUILDING HOUSES" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "CARPENTRY" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "CONSTRUCTION" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "CONTRACT WORKER - CUTTING TREES ETC." & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "Doing chicken projects." & c5 == 3;

replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "Flower seller" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 3  if c8other == "HERBALIST" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 3  if c8other == "Herbalist" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "MECHANIC" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "My mother was selling meat from home" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "SELLING CLOTHES" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "SELLING CLOTHES AND VEG." & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "SELLING MEAT" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "SELLING PELTS" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "SELLING SOUR MILK AND FRUIT" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "SEWING AND SELLING CLOTHES" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "SEWING CLOTHES AND SELLING THEM" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "Selling Vegetables" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "Selling food for school children" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "Selling meat" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "Sewing clothes" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "TAILOR" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 1  if c8other == "TAXI OWNER/DRIVER" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 1  if c8other == "Taxi Owner" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 1  if c8other == "Taxi owner" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 3  if c8other == "Traditional Healer" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "UPHOLSTERING" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 5  if c8other == "bought and sold furniture" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "brewing african beer" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "fields maize" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 7  if c8other == "long distance drive" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "made grass brooms" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "making clothes" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "ploughed his fields o grow food for household" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "selling fruit" & c5 == 3;
```

```
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "selling fruits and sweets" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "selling liquor" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "sewing" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "sewing clothes and selling them" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "shoemaker" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "sold beer" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 10 if c8other == "sold fish and wood" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 9  if c8other == "spaza shop" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 6  if c8other == "tailor" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 1  if c8other == "taxi owner" & c5 == 3;
replace HhhSelfOcc = 9  if c8other == "undertaker business" & c5 == 3;

replace HhhSelfOcc = 11 if HhhSelfOcc == . & c5 == 3;
```

Appendix 1.4 - HhhCasOcc

APPENDIX 1.4

```
#delimit;

/*This do file reclassifies the respondent's childhood household head occupational codes
  for casual work into MY CODES*/;

/* - MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The variables to be investigated are  c6_2soc, c6_2 & c5.*/;

/*tab  c5

  c.5. most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
   head do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
          1 |       1646       66.08       66.08
          2 |         52        2.09       68.17
          3 |        165        6.62       74.79
```

```
          4 |         71        2.85       77.64
          5 |         70        2.81       80.45
          6 |        325       13.05       93.50
          7 |        137        5.50       99.00
        999 |         25        1.00      100.00
------------+-----------------------------------
      Total |       2491      100.00
```

This table tells me that there are 52 HHH's who had casual work

```
. tab  c6_2soc
```

soc codes for question c6.2 if c5==2	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
850. not adequately defined	23	44.23	44.23
5123. waiter/bartender	1	1.92	46.15
5220. salesperson/petrol attendant	1	1.92	48.08
6113. gardener/groundsman	2	3.85	51.92
7122. bricklayer/paver	1	1.92	53.85
7129. builder	2	3.85	57.69
8273. machine-operator, grain	3	5.77	63.46
9131. domestic worker in private home	10	19.23	82.69
9211. farmhand/labourer	4	7.69	90.38
9313. general worker/labourer construct	1	1.92	92.31
9322. packer	4	7.69	100.00
Total	52	100.00	

This table tells me that 23 responses were not adequately defined. Further inspection revealed that this data is missing so I cannot even assign them. Will have to leave them as no data category 11 MY CODES*/;

```
gen HhhCasOcc = c6_2soc;

label var HhhCasOcc "hhh casual work occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhCasOcc = 1  if c6_2soc >= 1000 & c6_2soc <2000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 2  if c6_2soc >= 2000 & c6_2soc <3000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 3  if c6_2soc >= 3000 & c6_2soc <4000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 4  if c6_2soc >= 4000 & c6_2soc <5000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 5  if c6_2soc >= 5000 & c6_2soc <6000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 6  if c6_2soc >= 6000 & c6_2soc <8000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 7  if c6_2soc >= 8000 & c6_2soc <9000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 8  if c6_2soc >= 9000 & c6_2soc <10000;
replace HhhCasOcc = 11 if c6_2soc == 820 | c6_2soc == 830 | c6_2soc == 850;
```

Appendix 1.5 - HhhPrevOcc

APPENDIX 1.5

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the respondents' Household heads who were either unemployed or retired
  and had had a previous occupation. Looks to place these occupations into MY CODES.*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*For this variable those respondents who answered 4, 5, 6 or 7 for question c5 are to be
  considered. This is for mutual exclusivity for the hhh occupational codes.*/;

/*The variables to be considered are c5, c7 and c7soc*/;

/*
tab  c5

  c.5. most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
```

head do?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.	
1	1646	66.08	66.08	Regular wage
2	52	2.09	68.17	casual
3	165	6.62	74.79	self employed
4	71	2.85	77.64	Unemployed & looking for a job
5	70	2.81	80.45	Unemployed, wanting a job but not looking
6	325	13.05	93.50	Not working not wanting
7	137	5.50	99.00	Retired
999	25	1.00	100.00	
Total	2491	100.00		

Since we are looking at those who answered 4, 5 6 or 7 the total we are working with is
71 + 70 + 325 + 137 = 603

tab c7soc c5 if c5>3 & c5<8

soc codes for question c7 if c5==4	c.5. most of childhood, what did head do? 4	5	6	7	Total
820. unemployed	1	2	10	5	18
830. never employed	8	13	77	12	110
850. not adequately d	32	47	171	62	312
1130. village chief	0	0	1	0	1
1221. mine foreman	0	0	0	1	1
2230. nurse	0	1	0	2	3
3241. traditional hea	1	0	0	0	1
3471. designer	1	0	0	0	1
4141. clerk, filing	0	1	0	0	1
4211. cashier	0	0	0	1	1
4222. receptionist	0	0	1	0	1
5112. conductor/bus o	0	0	0	1	1
5122. chef/cook/grill	1	0	0	1	2
5123. waiter/bartende	0	0	1	0	1
5162. police officer	0	0	0	1	1
5163. prison warder/g	1	0	0	0	1
5169. security guard	1	1	1	0	3
5220. salesperson/pet	0	0	1	1	2
6111. subsistence far	4	1	11	1	17
6112. harvester, prun	0	0	0	1	1
6113. gardener/ground	1	0	0	1	2
6121. shepherd/herdsm	2	0	11	1	14
6141. tree feller/log	0	0	1	0	1
6152. fisherman	1	0	1	1	3
7111. miner/quarryman	3	1	4	4	12

7122. bricklayer/pave	0	0	0	1	1
7129. builder	1	0	0	1	2
7133. plasterer	1	0	0	0	1
7134. installation wo	0	0	0	2	2
7137. electrician	1	0	0	0	1
7141. painter	0	0	1	0	1
7231. mechanic/panelb	0	0	1	0	1
7241. repairer, elect	0	0	1	0	1
7411. butcher/cutter	0	0	0	1	1
7412. baker/confectio	0	0	0	1	1
7433. dressmaker/tail	0	0	0	2	2
7442. shoemaker	0	0	0	1	1
8324. truck driver	1	0	1	3	5
8340. sailor/boatman	0	1	0	0	1
9131. domestic worker	4	1	17	13	35
9132. cleaner	2	0	4	5	11
9151. delivery assist	0	0	0	2	2
9161. garbage collect	0	0	0	1	1
9211. farmhand/labour	1	1	4	4	10
9312. general worker/	2	0	1	1	4
9313. general worker/	1	0	3	2	6
9322. packer	0	0	0	1	1
9333. docker/stevedor	0	0	1	0	1
Total	71	70	325	137	603

As the above table shows, 110 hhh's were never employed and inspection comparing c7soc to c7 reveals that this is the case. The same is true for unemployed. 18 coded as unemployed and comparing c7soc to c7 reveals that this is the case. The 312 who have been coded as not adequately defined by c7soc is also mostly correct. I have however identified 4 cases which I feel can be classified: these are

	MY CODES
c7 = Worked at a parcel counter.	4
c7 = council	8
c7 = factory worker	8
c7 = making spices	8

This means that my codes for the variable HhhPrevOcc will reflect a total of 436 hhh's as having no occupational data

18 unemployed
110 never employed
308 not adequately defined
*/;

```
/*Generation of the variable*/;

gen HhhPrevOcc = .;

label var HhhPrevOcc "HhhPrevOcc Household head Previous Occ Cats MY CODES";

replace HhhPrevOcc = 1  if c7soc >= 1000 & c7soc <2000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 2  if c7soc >= 2000 & c7soc <3000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 3  if c7soc >= 3000 & c7soc <4000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 4  if c7soc >= 4000 & c7soc <5000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 5  if c7soc >= 5000 & c7soc <6000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 6  if c7soc >= 6000 & c7soc <8000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 7  if c7soc >= 8000 & c7soc <9000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 8  if c7soc >= 9000 & c7soc <10000;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 11 if (c7soc == 820 | c7soc == 830 | c7soc == 850) & c5 != 999;
replace HhhPrevOcc = 4  if c7 == "Worked at a parcel counter.";
replace HhhPrevOcc = 8  if c7 == "council";
replace HhhPrevOcc = 8  if c7 == "factory worker";
replace HhhPrevOcc = 8  if c7 == "making spices";
```

Appendix 1.6 - HhhOccCat

APPENDIX 1.6

```
#delimit;

/*This do file takes the variables HhhCasOcc HhhPrevOcc HhhRegWag HhhSelfOcc and creates
  one occupational category variable for the hhh combining all types of employment*/;

/*This do file will only be for those heads of household who are either the mother or the father*/;


do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\HhhCasOcc Household head Casual Occ Cats My
Codes.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\HhhPrevOcc Household head Previous Occ Cats My
Codes.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\HhhRegWag Household head Regular Wage Occ Cats
My Codes.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\HhhSelfOcc Household head Self Employed Occ
Cats My Codes.do";

gen HhhOccCat = .;
label var HhhOccCat "hhh Combined occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhOccCat = 1  if (HhhCasOcc == 1  | HhhPrevOcc == 1  | HhhRegWag == 1  | HhhSelfOcc == 1 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 2  if (HhhCasOcc == 2  | HhhPrevOcc == 2  | HhhRegWag == 2  | HhhSelfOcc == 2 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 3  if (HhhCasOcc == 3  | HhhPrevOcc == 3  | HhhRegWag == 3  | HhhSelfOcc == 3 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 4  if (HhhCasOcc == 4  | HhhPrevOcc == 4  | HhhRegWag == 4  | HhhSelfOcc == 4 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 5  if (HhhCasOcc == 5  | HhhPrevOcc == 5  | HhhRegWag == 5  | HhhSelfOcc == 5 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 6  if (HhhCasOcc == 6  | HhhPrevOcc == 6  | HhhRegWag == 6  | HhhSelfOcc == 6 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 7  if (HhhCasOcc == 7  | HhhPrevOcc == 7  | HhhRegWag == 7  | HhhSelfOcc == 7 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 8  if (HhhCasOcc == 8  | HhhPrevOcc == 8  | HhhRegWag == 8  | HhhSelfOcc == 8 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 9  if (HhhCasOcc == 9  | HhhPrevOcc == 9  | HhhRegWag == 9  | HhhSelfOcc == 9 ) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 10 if (HhhCasOcc == 10 | HhhPrevOcc == 10 | HhhRegWag == 10 | HhhSelfOcc == 10) & (c4 == 1 | c4
== 2);
replace HhhOccCat = 11 if (HhhCasOcc == 11 | HhhPrevOcc == 11 | HhhRegWag == 11 | HhhSelfOcc == 11 | c5 == 999) &
(c4 == 1 | c4 == 2);
```

Appendix 1.7 - HhhSpouseRegWag

APPENDIX 1.7

```
#delimit;

/*This do file is a copy of the procedure used in the do file "HhhRegWag Household head Regular
  Wage Occ Cats My Codes.do" the only difference being that this refers to the Household head
  spouse's regular wage occupational categories. As before, MY CODES are used for occupational
  categorization.*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The next table gives a breakdown of the type of employemnt the HHH's spouse was involved in:

tab c17,m

 c.17. most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
wife/husban |
   d of the |
```

head do?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
1	734	27.76	27.76
2	47	1.78	29.54
3	73	2.76	32.30
4	88	3.33	35.63
5	137	5.18	40.81
6	691	26.13	66.94
7	40	1.51	68.46
999	33	1.25	69.70
.	801	30.30	100.00
Total	2644	100.00	

As can be seen I will be working with the total of 734*/;

/*Variable c18_1soc in the data set has classified the responses for question c18.1 into the SOC codes. Tabulating this gives the following table:

tab c18_1soc

soc codes for question c18 if c17==1	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
830. never employed	5	0.68	0.68
850. not adequately defined	144	19.62	20.30
1222. foreman,manufacturing	6	0.82	21.12
1224. manager, trade (including supervi	1	0.14	21.25
1229. dean of university & manager/fore	1	0.14	21.39
1314. shopkeeper/owner, supervisor	2	0.27	21.66
1390. manager, city council	2	0.27	21.93
2224. pharmacist	2	0.27	22.21
2230. nurse	27	3.68	25.89
2310. teacher	15	2.04	27.93
3122. computer operator	1	0.14	28.07
3152. quantity controller/inspector	3	0.41	28.47
3412. insurance reprentative	1	0.14	28.61
3415. sales representative	2	0.27	28.88
3431. personal assistant/administrative	1	0.14	29.02
3433. bookkeeper	1	0.14	29.16
3460. social/community worker	1	0.14	29.29
3471. designer	2	0.27	29.56
4115. secretary	2	0.27	29.84
4122. clerk, credit/finance	2	0.27	30.11
4131. clerk, stockroom, storeroom, ware	1	0.14	30.25
4141. clerk, filing	6	0.82	31.06
4142. clerk, mail/postman	2	0.27	31.34

4211. cashier	3	0.41	31.74
4212. clerk, post office, teller	1	0.14	31.88
4222. receptionist	1	0.14	32.02
5121. housekeeper	2	0.27	32.29
5122. chef/cook/griller	15	2.04	34.33
5123. waiter/bartender	5	0.68	35.01
5131. traffic officer	1	0.14	35.15
5169. security guard	6	0.82	35.97
5220. salesperson/petrol attendant	13	1.77	37.74
6111. subsistence farmer	1	0.14	37.87
6112. harvester, pruner, plantation wor	2	0.27	38.15
6113. gardener/groundsman	3	0.41	38.56
6121. shepherd/herdsman	1	0.14	38.69
6152. fisherman	2	0.27	38.96
7111. miner/quarryman	10	1.36	40.33
7122. bricklayer/paver	2	0.27	40.60
7124. carpenter	2	0.27	40.87
7129. builder	2	0.27	41.14
7136. plumber	1	0.14	41.28
7212. welder/boilermaker	3	0.41	41.69
7231. mechanic/panelbeater	1	0.14	41.83
7324. spraypainter	1	0.14	41.96
7341. printer	3	0.41	42.37
7411. butcher/cutter	1	0.14	42.51
7412. baker/confectioner	1	0.14	42.64
7414. canner, fruit	1	0.14	42.78
7432. knitter/weaver	2	0.27	43.05
7433. dressmaker/tailor	10	1.36	44.41
7435. garment cutter/sorter	2	0.27	44.69
7442. shoemaker	9	1.23	45.91
8263. machinist, clothing & textiles	21	2.86	48.77
8274. machinist, baking/food	1	0.14	48.91
8283. t.v. assembler	1	0.14	49.05
8311. train operator	1	0.14	49.18
8322. driver/taxi, ambulance, car	1	0.14	49.32
8323. bus driver	1	0.14	49.46
8324. truck driver	7	0.95	50.41
8340. sailor/boatman	1	0.14	50.54
9112. hawker	1	0.14	50.68
9131. domestic worker in private home	239	32.56	83.24
9132. cleaner	36	4.90	88.15
9133. launderer	6	0.82	88.96
9151. delivery assistant	3	0.41	89.37
9211. farmhand/labourer	23	3.13	92.51
9312. general worker/labourer/handyman	33	4.50	97.00
9313. general worker/labourer construct	8	1.09	98.09

```
                  9322. packer  |         11        1.50       99.59
            9333. docker/stevedore  |          3        0.41      100.00
------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                              Total |        734      100.00
```

For this table, 5 responses were never employed and 144 are not adequately defined.
Out of this total of 144, I have classified 47 responses into MY CODES.
The total I will thus be working with is:

144 - 46 = 98 (not adequately defined)
98 + 5 (never evmployed) = 103

631 (classified according to MY CODES) and 103 (into the category 11 - no occupational data)*/;

/*Variable creation: variables to be considered are c17, c18_1, c18_1soc*/;

```
gen HhhSpouseRegWag = c18_1soc;
label var HhhSpouseRegWag "hhh's Spouse's regular wage occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 1  if c18_1soc >= 1000 & c18_1soc <2000;
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 2  if c18_1soc >= 2000 & c18_1soc <3000;
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 3  if c18_1soc >= 3000 & c18_1soc <4000;
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 4  if (c18_1soc >= 4000 & c18_1soc <5000) |
                                c18_1 == "NATIONAL PANASONIC - STAFF SUPERVISOR";
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 5  if (c18_1soc >= 5000 & c18_1soc <6000) |
                                c18_1 == "HYPERAMA" |
                             c18_1 == "JEWELLERY SHOP" |
                             c18_1 == "WHOLESALE COOKWARE" |
                             c18_1 == "take away shop";
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 6  if (c18_1soc >= 6000 & c18_1soc <8000) |
                                c18_1 == "CLOTHES MAKER" |
                                c18_1 == "COOKWARE MANUFACTURING WORKER" |
                                c18_1 == "She worked in a factory that makes clothing." |
                                c18_1 == "worked as a wood worker ,to make furniture" |
                                c18_1 == "working for a firm that produced doors and window frames";
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 7  if (c18_1soc >= 8000 & c18_1soc <9000) |
                                c18_1 == "FACTORY - MACHINIST" |
                                c18_1 == "MACHINE OPERATOR" |
                                c18_1 == "MACHINIST" |
                                c18_1 == "Machinist" |
                                c18_1 == "Machinist in a factory" |
                                c18_1 == "She was a machine operator" |
                                c18_1 == "machanistt" |
                                c18_1 == "machine operator" |
                                c18_1 == "machinist";
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 8  if (c18_1soc >= 9000 & c18_1soc <10000) |
```

```
                                                  Appendix 1_7 HhhSpouseRegWag
                                                c18_1 == "KITCHEN WORKER" |
                                                c18_1 == "NAVY PERSONNEL" |
                                                c18_1 == "PINEAPPLE SELLER" |
                                                c18_1 == "building bridges" |
                                                c18_1 == "chicken factory" |
                                                c18_1 == "clotthing factory" |
                                                c18_1 == "cotton factory" |
                                                c18_1 == "swimwear factory" |
                                                c18_1 == "working for the council";
replace HhhSpouseRegWag = 11 if HhhSpouseRegWag == 830 | HhhSpouseRegWag == 850;
```

Appendix 1.8 - HhhSpouseSelfOcc

APPENDIX 1.8

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the respondents' Household head's spouses who had a self-employed
  occupational category and places them into MY CODES.*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The variables to be examined are,  c17, c20, c20other, c20recode.*/;

/*
tab c17,m

 c.17. most |
        of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
wife/husban |
   d of the |
   head do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
```

1	734	27.76	27.76
2	47	1.78	29.54
3	73	2.76	32.30
4	88	3.33	35.63
5	137	5.18	40.81
6	691	26.13	66.94
7	40	1.51	68.46
999	33	1.25	69.70
.	801	30.30	100.00
Total	2644	100.00	

The above table shows us that 73 respondents said their hhh's spouse was Self employed.

```
 tab c20 if c17==3,m
```

c.20. if wife/husband of the head was self-employed - what kind of self-employme	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
1	22	30.14	30.14
2	4	5.48	35.62
3	15	20.55	56.16
996	23	31.51	87.67
.	9	12.33	100.00
Total	73	100.00	

The above table shows that 9 of these responses are missing, no occupational data.
23 that are coded as other, this is what the following table shows (their occupations).
The total I will thus be working with is 73:

64 allocated to MY CODES
9 allocated to category 11 of MY CODES

```
tab c20other c20 if c17==3,m
```

c.20. if wife/husband |

of the head self-employed - what kind of self-employment w	c.20. if wife/husband of the head was self-employed - what kind of self-employme 1	2	3	996	Total
	21	4	13	0	47
0	0	0	1	0	1
3	1	0	0	0	1
Builder - built house	0	0	0	1	1
CLOTHING	0	0	0	2	2
HERBALIST	0	0	0	1	1
RAN SPAZA	0	0	0	1	1
Running a spaza	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING FRUIT AND VEG	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING MEAT	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING SHEEP SKULLS	0	0	0	1	1
SELLING VEG.	0	0	0	1	1
SOLD MEAT	0	0	0	1	1
Sold hampers	0	0	0	1	1
brew beer	0	0	0	1	1
bridal goods	0	0	0	1	1
fields -maize	0	0	0	1	1
knittign,clotthes,sel	0	0	0	1	1
knittting	0	0	0	1	1
making clothes to sel	0	0	1	0	1
ploughed on the field	0	0	0	1	1
selling bread and dry	0	0	0	1	1
selling clohes	0	0	0	1	1
selling wool	0	0	0	1	1
sewed clotthing for s	0	0	0	1	1
sold beer and meat in	0	0	0	1	1
Total	22	4	15	23	73

c.20. if wife/husband of the head self-employed - what kind of self-employme .	Total

```
                      |         9 |        47
                    0 |         0 |         1
                    3 |         0 |         1
Builder - built house |         0 |         1
             CLOTHING |         0 |         2
            HERBALIST |         0 |         1
            RAN SPAZA |         0 |         1
      Running a spaza |         0 |         1
SELLING FRUIT AND VEG |         0 |         1
         SELLING MEAT |         0 |         1
SELLING SHEEP SKULLS  |         0 |         1
         SELLING VEG. |         0 |         1
            SOLD MEAT |         0 |         1
         Sold hampers |         0 |         1
            brew beer |         0 |         1
         bridal goods |         0 |         1
        fields -maize |         0 |         1
knittign,clotthes,sel |         0 |         1
            knittting |         0 |         1
making clothes to sel |         0 |         1
ploughed on the field |         0 |         1
selling bread and dry |         0 |         1
       selling clohes |         0 |         1
         selling wool |         0 |         1
sewed clotthing for s |         0 |         1
sold beer and meat in |         0 |         1
----------------------+-----------+----------
                Total |         9 |        73


*/;

/*The variable c20 for self employed has been used because the codes have been recategorized
  according to MY CODES*/;

gen HhhSpouseSelfOcc =.;
label var HhhSpouseSelfOcc "hhh self-employed occ cats MY CODES";

replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 5 if c20 == 1 & c17 == 3  /*This makes traders = Service workers and shop
                                                       and market sales workers*/;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6 if c20 == 2 & c17 == 3  /*This makes farmers = Skilled agricultural &
                                                       Fishery workers*/;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6 if c20 == 3 & c17 == 3  /*This makes self-employed artisans = craft and
                                                       related trades workers*/;

/*This next section takes the 23 respondents who described the HHH occupation under other and
```

```
  puts it into MY CODES*/;

replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6  if c20other == "fields -maize" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6  if c20other == "knittting" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6  if c20other == "ploughed on the field to grow food to supportt the" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6  if c20other == "sewed clotthing for sale in town" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 6  if c20other == "knittign,clotthes,selling food" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "selling wool" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 3  if c20other == "HERBALIST" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "CLOTHING" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "bridal goods" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "SELLING VEG." & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "selling bread and dry east" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "Sold hampers" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "SELLING MEAT" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "SELLING FRUIT AND VEG" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "SELLING SHEEP SKULLS AND BEER" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "CLOTHING" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "brew beer" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "SOLD MEAT" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 10 if c20other == "selling clohes" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 9  if c20other == "RAN SPAZA" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 9  if c20other == "sold beer and meat ina ttarvern own business" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 9  if c20other == "Running a spaza" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 7  if c20other == "Builder - built houses" & c17 == 3;
replace HhhSpouseSelfOcc = 11 if HhhSpouseSelfOcc == . & c17 == 3;
```

Appendix 1.9 - HhhSpouseCasOcc

APPENDIX 1.9

```
#delimit;

/*This do file reclassifies the respondent's childhood household head's spouse's occupational
  codes for casual work into MY CODES*/;

/* - MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*The variables to be investigated are  c18_2, c17*/;

/*tab c17,m

 c.17. most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
wife/husban |
   d of the |
   head do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
          1 |        734       27.76       27.76
```

2	47	1.78	29.54
3	73	2.76	32.30
4	88	3.33	35.63
5	137	5.18	40.81
6	691	26.13	66.94
7	40	1.51	68.46
999	33	1.25	69.70
.	801	30.30	100.00
Total	2644	100.00	

This table tells me that there are 47 HHH's spouses who had casual work

. tab c18_2 if c17 ==2,m

c.18.2. if wife/husband of the head was a casual worker, what kind of work usual	Freq.	Percent	Cum.	MY CODES
	12	25.53	25.53	11
BUTCHERY STORE EMPLOYEE	1	2.13	27.66	5
CLEANING OFFICES	1	2.13	29.79	8
CONSTRUCTION CO. WORKER AND GENERAL WOR	1	2.13	31.91	8
Cleaning, washing - Domestic work	1	2.13	34.04	8
Construction, building houses, mixing c	1	2.13	36.17	8
DOESN'T KNOW	1	2.13	38.30	11
DOMESTIC	2	4.26	42.55	8
DOMESTIC WORKER	2	4.26	46.81	8
Domestic work	1	2.13	48.94	8
baby sitting	1	2.13	51.06	8
cleaner	1	2.13	53.19	8
domesic work	1	2.13	55.32	8
domestic duties	3	6.38	61.70	8
domestic services	1	2.13	63.83	8
domestic work	1	2.13	65.96	8
domestic worker	5	10.64	76.60	8
domesttic work or farm labour	1	2.13	78.72	8
domesttis worker	1	2.13	80.85	8
he built houses under murray contractor	1	2.13	82.98	8
helping husband with his business	1	2.13	85.11	11
school feeding scheme	1	2.13	87.23	8
she was a domsctic worker,washing and i	1	2.13	89.36	8
she was working as a domesttic worker	1	2.13	91.49	8
spice making	1	2.13	93.62	8
washing clothes for the neighbours	1	2.13	95.74	8
working at a farm	1	2.13	97.87	8

```
           working at a farm ploughing |          1        2.13      100.00           8
---------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                 Total |         47      100.00
```

```
This table tells me that 12 responses were missing. Will have to leave them as no data
category 11 MY CODES, a further two responses are not adequalte defined meaning the total
i will work with is 47 - 12 - 2 = 33*/;

gen HhhSpouseCasOcc = . if c17 == 2;

label var HhhSpouseCasOcc "hhh's Spouse's casual work occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 5  if c18_2 == "BUTCHERY STORE EMPLOYEE" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "CLEANING OFFICES" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "CONSTRUCTION CO. WORKER AND GENERAL WORKER" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "Cleaning, washing - Domestic work" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "Construction, building houses, mixing cement." & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "DOMESTIC" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "DOMESTIC WORKER" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "Domestic work" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "baby sitting" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "cleaner" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domesic work" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domestic duties" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domestic services" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domestic work" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domestic worker" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domesttic work or farm labour" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "domesttis worker" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "he built houses under murray contractor" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "school feeding scheme" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "she was a domsctic worker,washing and ironing ,cooking" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "she was working as a domesttic worker" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "spice making" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "washing clothes for the neighbours" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "working at a farm" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 8  if c18_2 == "working at a farm ploughing" & c17 == 2;
replace HhhSpouseCasOcc = 11 if HhhSpouseCasOcc == . & c17 == 2;
```

Appendix 1.10 - HhhSpousePrevOcc

APPENDIX 1.10

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the respondents' Household heads Spouses who were either unemployed or
  retired and had had a previous occupation. Looks to place these occupations into MY CODES.*/;

/*
- MY CODES -

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie as defined by Owen)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*Please note that the above categories match the Standard Occuptional codes (SOC) up until
  category 5. The SOC categories 6 and 7 have been collapsed into one (category 6) and new
  categories of Street vendors (category 9) and No occupational data (category 10) have
  been created. Plant and machinery operators and assemblers have been coded to category 7 &
  Elementary occupations have been coded to category 8*/;

/*For this variable those respondents who answered 4, 5, 6 or 7 for question c5 are to be
  considered. This is for mutual exclusivity for the hhh occupational codes.*/;

/*The variables to be considered are c17, c19 and c19soc*/;

/*tab c17,m

 c.17. most |
         of |
 childhood, |
   what did |
wife/husban |
```

d of the head do?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
1	734	27.76	27.76
2	47	1.78	29.54
3	73	2.76	32.30
4	88	3.33	35.63
5	137	5.18	40.81
6	691	26.13	66.94
7	40	1.51	68.46
999	33	1.25	69.70
.	801	30.30	100.00
Total	2644	100.00	

Since we are looking at those who answered 4, 5 6 or 7 the total we are working with is 88 + 137 + 691 + 40 = 956

```
 tab c19soc if c17 >3 & c17 < 8
```

soc codes for question c19 if c17==4	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
820. unemployed	468	48.95	48.95
830. never employed	381	39.85	88.81
850. not adequately defined	12	1.26	90.06
1314. shopkeeper/owner, supervisor	1	0.10	90.17
3471. designer	2	0.21	90.38
4115. secretary	1	0.10	90.48
4132. clerk, order	1	0.10	90.59
4211. cashier	1	0.10	90.69
5122. chef/cook/griller	1	0.10	90.79
5123. waiter/bartender	1	0.10	90.90
5131. traffic officer	2	0.21	91.11
5220. salesperson/petrol attendant	5	0.52	91.63
6111. subsistence farmer	6	0.63	92.26
6141. tree feller/logger	1	0.10	92.36
7129. builder	1	0.10	92.47
7224. grinder/metal polisher	1	0.10	92.57
7241. repairer, electrical equipment	1	0.10	92.68
7432. knitter/weaver	2	0.21	92.89
7433. dressmaker/tailor	5	0.52	93.41
7436. sail/tent maker	1	0.10	93.51
8263. machinist, clothing & textiles	1	0.10	93.62
8331. tractor driver	1	0.10	93.72
9131. domestic worker in private home	46	4.81	98.54
9132. cleaner	3	0.31	98.85

Appendix 1_10 HhhSpousePrevOcc

9133. launderer	1	0.10	98.95
9211. farmhand/labourer	5	0.52	99.48
9312. general worker/labourer/handyman	2	0.21	99.69
9313. general worker/labourer construct	1	0.10	99.79
9322. packer	2	0.21	100.00
Total	956	100.00	

As the above table shows, 381 hhh's spouses were never employed and 468 were unemployed. Inspection reveals that these responses cannot be classified at all and have to be allocatd to category 11 of MY CODES. For those not adequately defined, I have found 2 responses that can be allocated to MY CODES:

machanist
machinist

This means that my codes for the variable HhhSpousePrevOcc will reflect a total of 859 hhh's spouses as having no occupational data

468 unemployed
381 never employed
10 not adequately defined
*/;

/*Generation of the variable*/;

```
gen HhhSpousePrevOcc = .;

label var HhhSpousePrevOcc "Hhh Spouse's Previous Occ Cats MY CODES";

replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 1  if c19soc >= 1000 & c19soc <2000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 2  if c19soc >= 2000 & c19soc <3000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 3  if c19soc >= 3000 & c19soc <4000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 4  if c19soc >= 4000 & c19soc <5000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 5  if c19soc >= 5000 & c19soc <6000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 6  if c19soc >= 6000 & c19soc <8000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 7  if c19soc >= 8000 & c19soc <9000;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 8  if c19soc >= 9000 & c19soc <10000 & (c17 > 3 & c17 <8) ;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 11 if (c19soc == 820 | c19soc == 830 | c19soc == 850) & c17>3 & c17<8;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 7  if c19 == "machanist" & c19soc == 850;
replace HhhSpousePrevOcc = 7  if c19 == "machinist" & c19soc == 850;
```

Appendix 1.11 - HhhSpouseOccCat

APPENDIX 1.11

```
#delimit;

/*This do file takes the variables HhhSpouseCasOcc HhhSpousePrevOcc HhhSpouseRegWag HhhSpouseSelfOcc and creates
  one occupational category variable for the hhh combining all types of employment*/;

/*This do file will only be for those heads of household's spouses who are either the mother or the father*/;


do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\Hhh spouse casual wage.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\Hhh spouse previous occ.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\Hhh spouse regular wage.do";
do "D:\Work Mainframe\Masters 2004 Main Frame\1 Ultimate KMP do files\hhh spouse self occ.do";

gen HhhSpouseOccCat = .;
label var HhhSpouseOccCat "hhh Spouse's Combined occ categories MY CODES";

replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 1  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 1  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 1  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 1  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 1 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 2  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 2  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 2  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 2  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 2 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 3  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 3  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 3  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 3  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 3 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 4  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 4  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 4  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 4  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 4 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 5  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 5  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 5  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 5  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 5 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 6  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 6  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 6  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 6  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 6 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 7  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 7  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 7  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 7  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 7 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 8  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 8  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 8  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 8  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 8 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 9  if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 9  | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 9  | HhhSpouseRegWag == 9  |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 9 ) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 10 if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 10 | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 10 | HhhSpouseRegWag == 10 |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 10) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
replace HhhSpouseOccCat = 11 if c15==1 & (HhhSpouseCasOcc == 11 | HhhSpousePrevOcc == 11 | HhhSpouseRegWag == 11 |
HhhSpouseSelfOcc == 11 | c17 == 999) & ((c4 == 1 & c16 == 2) | (c4 == 2 & c16 == 1));
```

Appendix 1.12 - FatherOccCat

APPENDIX 1.12

```
#delimit;

/*Do file looking at the occupation of the father who was not the household head or the spouse
  of the household head*/;

/*tab c30 if c4!=1 & c16!=1

  c.30. for |
    most of |
       your |
  childhood |
   what did |
your father |
        do? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
          1 |        315       77.78       77.78
          2 |          7        1.73       79.51
          3 |         16        3.95       83.46
          4 |         11        2.72       86.17
          5 |          7        1.73       87.90
          6 |         10        2.47       90.37
          7 |          4        0.99       91.36
        999 |         35        8.64      100.00
------------+-----------------------------------
      Total |        405      100.00

The above table shows the totals I will be working with.
For regular wage, 83 responses are not adequately defined, i.e. 315 - 83 = 232
But of these not adequately defined I have managed to code the following:

machine operator  7
maintenance worker  8
mechanic 6

therefore my total will be:
235 coded to my codes
80 = category 11, no ocucpational data for a total of 315 (235 + 80)*/;

gen FatherRegWag = c31_1soc if c4 != 1 & c16 != 1;
label var FatherRegWag "Father not hhh or hhhspouse Regular wage Occ cats MY CODES";

replace FatherRegWag = 11 if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & c31_1soc == 850;
replace FatherRegWag = 1  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 1000 & c31_1soc <2000);
```

```
replace FatherRegWag = 2  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 2000 & c31_1soc <3000);
replace FatherRegWag = 3  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 3000 & c31_1soc <4000);
replace FatherRegWag = 4  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 4000 & c31_1soc <5000);

replace FatherRegWag = 5  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 5000 & c31_1soc <6000);
replace FatherRegWag = 6  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 6000 & c31_1soc <8000) |
                                                 c31_1 == "mechanic";
replace FatherRegWag = 7  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 8000 & c31_1soc <9000) |
                                                 c31_1 == "machine operator";
replace FatherRegWag = 8  if (c4!=1 & c16!=1) & (c31_1soc >= 9000 & c31_1soc <10000) |
                                                 c31_1 == "maintenance worker";

/*CASUAL WORK*/;

gen FatherCasOcc = .;
label var FatherCasOcc "Father not hhh or hhhspouse casual occ cats MY CODES";

replace FatherCasOcc = 6  if c31_2 == "grape harvester" & c30==2;
replace FatherCasOcc = 8  if (c31_2 == "PEPSI DELIVERY" | c31_2 == "GARDENER") & c30==2;
replace FatherCasOcc = 11 if (c31_2 == "CASUAL" | hhid == 369 | hhid == 136 | hhid == 1007) & c30==2;



/*RETIRED, UNEMPLOYED OR PREVIOUSLY EMPLOYED*/;

/*tab  c32soc if c4!=1 & c16!=1 & c30>3 & c30<8

             soc codes for question c32 |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                        820. unemployed |          3        9.38        9.38
                      830. never employed |          5       15.63       25.00
              850. not adequately defined |         12       37.50       62.50
                           3243. sangoma |          2        6.25       68.75
                  5122. chef/cook/griller |          1        3.13       71.88
                6111. subsistence farmer |          1        3.13       75.00
                         6152. fisherman |          1        3.13       78.13
                   7111. miner/quarryman |          3        9.38       87.50
              7231. mechanic/panelbeater |          1        3.13       90.63
                      8324. truck driver |          1        3.13       93.75
9313. general worker/labourer construct |          1        3.13       96.88
                    9333. docker/stevedore |          1        3.13      100.00
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                  Total |         32      100.00
*/;
```

```
gen FatherPrevOcc = .;
label var FatherPrevOcc "Father not hhh or hhhspouse Previous occ cats MY CODES";

replace FatherPrevOcc = 3  if c32soc == 3243 & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);
replace FatherPrevOcc = 5  if c32soc == 5122 & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);
replace FatherPrevOcc = 6  if (c32soc >= 6000 & c32soc < 8000) & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);
replace FatherPrevOcc = 7  if c32soc == 8324 & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);
replace FatherPrevOcc = 8  if (c32soc >= 9000 & c32soc < 10000) & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);
replace FatherPrevOcc = 11 if (c32soc == 820 | c32soc == 830 | c32soc == 850) & c4!=1 & c16!=1 & (c30>3 & c30<8);


/*SELF-EMPLOYED*/;

/*
tab  c33 if c4!=1 & c16!=1 & c30==3,m

   c.33. if |
your father |
        was |
self-employ |
   ed, what |
    kind of |
self-employ |
   ment was |
        it? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
------------+-----------------------------------
          1 |          3       18.75       18.75
          2 |          1        6.25       25.00
          3 |          6       37.50       62.50
        996 |          4       25.00       87.50
          . |          2       12.50      100.00
------------+-----------------------------------
      Total |         16      100.00

list   c33 c33other if c4!=1 & c16!=1 & c30==3

           c33              c33other   MY CODES
  96.        1
 393.      996  OWN PEST CONTROL CO.          9
 666.        3
 688.        1
 854.        3
1067.        3
1093.        3
1203.        1
1206.        3
```

```
1620.      996            TAXI-OWNER         1
1689.        .
1994.      996       BUILDING HOUSES         6
2223.      996          fields-maize         6
2457.        2
2522.        3
2525.        .


*/;


gen FatherSelfOcc = .;
label var FatherSelfOcc "Father not hhh or hhhspouse Self Employed occ cats MY CODES";

replace FatherSelfOcc = 5  if (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3) & c33 == 1;
replace FatherSelfOcc = 6  if (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3) & c33 == 2;
replace FatherSelfOcc = 6  if (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3) & c33 == 3;
replace FatherSelfOcc = 1  if c33other == "TAXI-OWNER" & (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3);
replace FatherSelfOcc = 6  if c33other == "BUILDING HOUSES" & (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3);
replace FatherSelfOcc = 6  if c33other == "fields-maize" & (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3);
replace FatherSelfOcc = 9  if c33other == "OWN PEST CONTROL CO." & (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3);
replace FatherSelfOcc = 11 if (c4 != 1 & c16 != 1 & c30 == 3) & (hhid == 803 | hhid == 1105);

/*GENERATION OF COMBINATION OF ABOVE $ OCC CATEGORIES*/;

gen FatherOccCat = .;
label var FatherOccCat "Father not hhh or hhhspouse OCC CATS combined MY CODES";

replace FatherOccCat = 1  if (FatherCasOcc == 1  | FatherPrevOcc == 1  | FatherRegWag == 1  | FatherSelfOcc == 1 );
replace FatherOccCat = 2  if (FatherCasOcc == 2  | FatherPrevOcc == 2  | FatherRegWag == 2  | FatherSelfOcc == 2 );
replace FatherOccCat = 3  if (FatherCasOcc == 3  | FatherPrevOcc == 3  | FatherRegWag == 3  | FatherSelfOcc == 3 );
replace FatherOccCat = 4  if (FatherCasOcc == 4  | FatherPrevOcc == 4  | FatherRegWag == 4  | FatherSelfOcc == 4 );
replace FatherOccCat = 5  if (FatherCasOcc == 5  | FatherPrevOcc == 5  | FatherRegWag == 5  | FatherSelfOcc == 5 );
replace FatherOccCat = 6  if (FatherCasOcc == 6  | FatherPrevOcc == 6  | FatherRegWag == 6  | FatherSelfOcc == 6 );
replace FatherOccCat = 7  if (FatherCasOcc == 7  | FatherPrevOcc == 7  | FatherRegWag == 7  | FatherSelfOcc == 7 );
replace FatherOccCat = 8  if (FatherCasOcc == 8  | FatherPrevOcc == 8  | FatherRegWag == 8  | FatherSelfOcc == 8 );
replace FatherOccCat = 9  if (FatherCasOcc == 9  | FatherPrevOcc == 9  | FatherRegWag == 9  | FatherSelfOcc == 9 );
replace FatherOccCat = 10 if (FatherCasOcc == 10 | FatherPrevOcc == 10 | FatherRegWag == 10 | FatherSelfOcc == 10);
replace FatherOccCat = 11 if (FatherCasOcc == 11 | FatherPrevOcc == 11 | FatherRegWag == 11 | FatherSelfOcc == 11 |
c30 == 999) & (c4!=1 & c16!=1);
```

Appendix 1.13 - MotherOccCat

APPENDIX 1.13

```
#delimit;

/*Do file looking at the occupation of the Mother who was not the household head or the spouse
  of the household head*/;

/*tab c43 if c4!=2 & c16!=2
```

c.43. for most of your childhood what did your mother do?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.
1	175	56.82	56.82
2	12	3.90	60.71
3	16	5.19	65.91
4	15	4.87	70.78
5	11	3.57	74.35
6	69	22.40	96.75
7	4	1.30	98.05
999	6	1.95	100.00
Total	308	100.00	

The above table shows the totals I will be working with.
For regular wage, 28 responses are not adequately defined, i.e. 175 - 28 = 147
But of these not adequately defined I have managed to code the following:

Machinist 7
making juice 8
Machinist in a factory 7
working in a firm making clothes 6
machine operator in a factory 7

therefore my total will be:
152 coded to my codes
23 = category 11, no ocucpational data for a total of 175 (152 + 23)*/;

```
gen MotherRegWag = c44_1soc if c4 != 2 & c16 != 2;
```

```
label var MotherRegWag "Mother not hhh or hhhspouse Regular wage Occ cats MY CODES";

replace MotherRegWag = 11 if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & c44_1soc == 850;
replace MotherRegWag = 1  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 1000 & c44_1soc <2000);
replace MotherRegWag = 2  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 2000 & c44_1soc <3000);
replace MotherRegWag = 3  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 3000 & c44_1soc <4000);
replace MotherRegWag = 4  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 4000 & c44_1soc <5000);

replace MotherRegWag = 5  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 5000 & c44_1soc <6000);
replace MotherRegWag = 6  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 6000 & c44_1soc <8000) |
                                                    c44_1 == "working in a firm making clothes";
replace MotherRegWag = 7  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 8000 & c44_1soc <9000) |
                                                    c44_1 == "Machinist" |
                                                    c44_1 == "Machinist in a factory" |
                                                    c44_1 == "machine operator in a factory";

replace MotherRegWag = 8  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2) & (c44_1soc >= 9000 & c44_1soc <10000) |
                                                    c44_1 == "making juice";

/*CASUAL WORK*/;


/*tab  c44_2 if c4 != 2 & c16!= 2 & c43==2,m
```

c.44.2. if your mother was a casual worker - what kind of work did she do?	Freq.	Percent	Cum.	MY CODES
	2	16.67	16.67	11
CLEANER	1	8.33	25.00	8
DOMESTIC	2	16.67	41.67	8
FARM WORKER	1	8.33	50.00	8
FOOD DEPT.	1	8.33	58.33	11
HOUSE KEEPER	1	8.33	66.67	5
chars (cleaing houses)	1	8.33	75.00	8
cuttting ttrees in the forestt	1	8.33	83.33	6
domesttic worker	1	8.33	91.67	8
working as adomestic	1	8.33	100.00	8
Total	12	100.00		

```
*/;


gen MotherCasOcc = .;
label var MotherCasOcc "Mother not hhh or hhhspouse casual occ cats MY CODES";

replace MotherCasOcc = 5  if c44_2 == "HOUSE KEEPER" & c43==2 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2;
```

```
replace MotherCasOcc = 8  if (c44_2 == "CLEANER" | c44_2 == "DOMESTIC" | c44_2 == "FARM WORKER" |
                              c44_2 == "chars (cleaing houses)" | c44_2 == "domesttic worker" |
                              c44_2 == "working as adomestic") & c43==2 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2;
replace MotherCasOcc = 6  if c44_2 == "cuttting ttrees in the forestt" & c43 == 2 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2;
replace MotherCasOcc = 11 if (c44_2 == "FOOD DEPT." | hhid == 728 | hhid == 1189) & c43 == 2 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2;



/*RETIRED, UNEMPLOYED OR PREVIOUSLY EMPLOYED*/;

/*tab  c45soc if c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43>3 & c43<8

             soc codes for question c45 |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                        820. unemployed |         40       40.40       40.40
                    830. never employed |         44       44.44       84.85
            850. not adequately defined |          2        2.02       86.87
    1314. shopkeeper/owner, supervisor  |          1        1.01       87.88
                             2230. nurse |          1        1.01       88.89
                          4115. secretary |          1        1.01       89.90
                5122. chef/cook/griller  |          1        1.01       90.91
 9131. domestic worker in private home   |          7        7.07       97.98
                           9132. cleaner  |          1        1.01       98.99
9312. general worker/labourer/handyman   |          1        1.01      100.00
----------------------------------------+-----------------------------------
                                  Total |         99      100.00
*/;


gen MotherPrevOcc = .;
label var MotherPrevOcc "Mother not hhh or hhhspouse Previous occ cats MY CODES";

replace MotherPrevOcc = 1  if c45soc == 1314 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 & c43<8);
replace MotherPrevOcc = 2  if c45soc == 2230 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 & c43<8);
replace MotherPrevOcc = 4  if c45soc == 4115 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 & c43<8);
replace MotherPrevOcc = 5  if c45soc == 5122 & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 & c43<8);
replace MotherPrevOcc = 8  if (c45soc >= 9000 & c45soc < 10000) & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 & c43<8);
replace MotherPrevOcc = 11 if (c45soc == 820 | c45soc == 830 | c45soc == 850) & c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & (c43>3 &
c43<8);


/*SELF-EMPLOYED*/;

/*
tab  c46 if c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43==3,m
```

```
   c.46. if |
your mother |
        was |
self-employ |
   ed, what |
    kind of |
self-employ |
   ment was |
         it? |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
-------------+-----------------------------------
           1 |          6       37.50       37.50
           2 |          2       12.50       50.00
           3 |          3       18.75       68.75
         996 |          3       18.75       87.50
           . |          2       12.50      100.00
-------------+-----------------------------------
       Total |         16      100.00

list   c46 c46other if c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43==3

           c46                       c46other
 347.        .                                      11
 509.        1
 748.        1
1093.        1
1106.      996  selling beer(self employed)         10
1575.        3
1775.        .      making food for selling         10
1955.        1
1974.        1
2095.        3
2110.      996                  SELLING FISH        10
2232.      996                 self employed        11
2422.        3
2452.        1
2477.        2
2599.        2


*/;


gen MotherSelfOcc = .;
label var MotherSelfOcc "Mother not hhh or hhhspouse Self Employed occ cats MY CODES";

replace MotherSelfOcc = 5  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3) & c46 == 1;
```

```
replace MotherSelfOcc = 6  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3) & c46 == 2;
replace MotherSelfOcc = 6  if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3) & c46 == 3;
replace MotherSelfOcc = 10 if c46other == "selling beer(self employed)" & (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3);
replace MotherSelfOcc = 10 if c46other == "making food for selling" & (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3);
replace MotherSelfOcc = 10 if c46other == "SELLING FISH" & (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3);
replace MotherSelfOcc = 11 if (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2 & c43 == 3) & c46other == "self employed" | hhid == 342;

/*GENERATION OF COMBINATION OF ABOVE $ OCC CATEGORIES*/;

gen MotherOccCat = .;
label var MotherOccCat "Mother not hhh or hhhspouse OCC CATS combined MY CODES";

replace MotherOccCat = 1  if (MotherCasOcc == 1  | MotherPrevOcc == 1  | MotherRegWag == 1  | MotherSelfOcc == 1 );
replace MotherOccCat = 2  if (MotherCasOcc == 2  | MotherPrevOcc == 2  | MotherRegWag == 2  | MotherSelfOcc == 2 );
replace MotherOccCat = 3  if (MotherCasOcc == 3  | MotherPrevOcc == 3  | MotherRegWag == 3  | MotherSelfOcc == 3 );
replace MotherOccCat = 4  if (MotherCasOcc == 4  | MotherPrevOcc == 4  | MotherRegWag == 4  | MotherSelfOcc == 4 );
replace MotherOccCat = 5  if (MotherCasOcc == 5  | MotherPrevOcc == 5  | MotherRegWag == 5  | MotherSelfOcc == 5 );
replace MotherOccCat = 6  if (MotherCasOcc == 6  | MotherPrevOcc == 6  | MotherRegWag == 6  | MotherSelfOcc == 6 );
replace MotherOccCat = 7  if (MotherCasOcc == 7  | MotherPrevOcc == 7  | MotherRegWag == 7  | MotherSelfOcc == 7 );
replace MotherOccCat = 8  if (MotherCasOcc == 8  | MotherPrevOcc == 8  | MotherRegWag == 8  | MotherSelfOcc == 8 );
replace MotherOccCat = 9  if (MotherCasOcc == 9  | MotherPrevOcc == 9  | MotherRegWag == 9  | MotherSelfOcc == 9 );
replace MotherOccCat = 10 if (MotherCasOcc == 10 | MotherPrevOcc == 10 | MotherRegWag == 10 | MotherSelfOcc == 10);
replace MotherOccCat = 11 if (MotherCasOcc == 11 | MotherPrevOcc == 11 | MotherRegWag == 11 | MotherSelfOcc == 11 |
c43 == 999) & (c4 != 2 & c16 != 2);
```

Appendix 1.14 - HhhParOccCat

APPENDIX 1.14

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the household head's occupation who is a parent and compares
  it with the occupation of the Spouse of the household head who is a parent and takes
  the occupational category which is numerically lower of the two
 (i.e. a higher occupational class standing)*/;

gen HhhParOccCat = .;

label var HhhParOccCat "Occupational category for hhh or spouse highest of the 2";

replace HhhParOccCat = HhhOccCat if HhhSpouseOccCat == .;
replace HhhParOccCat = HhhSpouseOccCat if HhhOccCat == .;
replace HhhParOccCat = HhhOccCat if  HhhOccCat < HhhSpouseOccCat;
replace HhhParOccCat = HhhSpouseOccCat if HhhSpouseOccCat < HhhOccCat;
replace HhhParOccCat = HhhOccCat if HhhOccCat == HhhSpouseOccCat;
```

Appendix 1.15 - ParOccCat

APPENDIX 1.15

```
#delimit;

/*This do file looks at the occupations of father who is not hhh or hhh spouse and the mother who
  is not hhh or hhh spouse and chooses the higher social class standing of the 2*/;

gen ParOccCat = .;

label var ParOccCat "Occupational category for Parent not hhh or spouse highest of the 2";

replace ParOccCat = FatherOccCat if MotherOccCat == . & c4!=1 & c16!=1;
replace ParOccCat = MotherOccCat if FatherOccCat == . & c4!=2 & c16!=2;
replace ParOccCat = FatherOccCat if FatherOccCat < MotherOccCat & c4!=1 & c16!=1;
replace ParOccCat = MotherOccCat if MotherOccCat < FatherOccCat & c4!=2 & c16!=2;
replace ParOccCat = FatherOccCat if FatherOccCat == MotherOccCat & ((c4!=2 & c16!=2 | c4!=1 & c16!=1));
```

Appendix 1.16 - ParentOcc

APPENDIX 1.16

```
#delimit;

/*Do file looking at combining parents who are not hhh or hhh spouse with hhh and hhh spouse
  who are parents*/;

gen ParentOcc = .;
label var ParentOcc "Parents' occupational categories MY CODES";

replace ParentOcc = HhhParOccCat if HhhParOccCat < FatherOccCat & HhhParOccCat < MotherOccCat;
replace ParentOcc = FatherOccCat if FatherOccCat < HhhParOccCat & FatherOccCat < MotherOccCat;
replace ParentOcc = MotherOccCat if MotherOccCat < HhhParOccCat & MotherOccCat < FatherOccCat;
replace ParentOcc = FatherOccCat if FatherOccCat < MotherOccCat & HhhParOccCat == .;
replace ParentOcc = MotherOccCat if MotherOccCat < FatherOccCat & HhhParOccCat == .;
```

Appendix 1.17 - qualify

APPENDIX 1.17

```
#delimit;

/*This do file creates a variable which acts as a place holder for all those
  respondents who are counted when the occupations of parents and respondents are
  cross tabulated*/;
/*The total should be 1242. This includes all those who are still on school*/;

gen qualify = .;
replace qualify = 1 if ParentOcc != . & ResOccCat != .;

label var qualify "Respondents who qualify for the mobility analysis";
```

Appendix 1.18 - qualify2

APPENDIX 1.18

```
#delimit;

/*This do file creates a variable which acts as a place holder for all those
  respondents who are counted when the occupations of parents and respondents are
  cross tabulated*/;
/*The total should be 1232. This excludes all those who are still on school*/;

gen qualify2 = qualify;
replace qualify2 = . if ParentOcc != . & ResOccCat != . & a22 == 1 & qualify == 1;

label var  qualify2 "Respondents who qualify excluding the school goers";
```

Appendix 1.19 - MY NEW OCC CODES

APPENDIX 1.19

```
#delimit;

/*This do file takes the occupational codes of respondents and their parents and
  combines the upper and middles class occupational categories*/;

/*MY OLD CODES

  1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers
  2 = Professionals
  3 = Technicians and associate professionals
  4 = Clerks
  5 = Service workers and shop and market sales workers
  6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
  6 = Craft and related trades workers
  7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
  8 = Elementary occupations
  > 9 = Self-Employed small business on a small scale (petit bourgeoisie put back into sales Owen no longer exist)
 10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)
 11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
                                            830 - Never Employed
                                            850 - Not adequately defined
                                            996 - Other not classified into categories
                                                  1 through 9*/;

/*MY NEW OCC CODES

  1 = 1 + 2 + 3 from above
  2 = 4 + 5 from above
  the rest remain the same*/;

gen ResOccCat2 = ResOccCat;
replace ResOccCat2 = 1 if ResOccCat == 1 | ResOccCat == 2 | ResOccCat == 3;
replace ResOccCat2 = 2 if ResOccCat == 4 | ResOccCat == 5;

label var ResOccCat2 "Respondent occupations MY NEW OCC CODES";

gen ParentOcc2 = ParentOcc;
replace ParentOcc2 = 1 if ParentOcc == 1 | ParentOcc == 2 | ParentOcc == 3;
replace ParentOcc2 = 2 if ParentOcc == 4 | ParentOcc == 5;

label var ParentOcc2 "Parent occupations MY NEW OCC CODES";

/*For my new codes, category 9 has been dissolved into category 5 because this group on its
```

own was too small, my resulting new occupational categories reads as follows

1 = Legislators, senior officials and managers,Professionals,Technicians and associate professionals
2 = Clerks,Service workers and shop and market sales workers

6 = Skilled agricultural and fishery workers,Craft and related trades workers

7 = Plant and machinery operators and assemblers
8 = Elementary occupations

10 = Small Vendors (as defined by Owen)

11 = No occupational data - combination of 820 - Unemployed,
830 - Never Employed
850 - Not adequately defined
996 - Other not classified into categories
1 through 9*/;

Appendix 1.20 - PopGrp

APPENDIX 1.20

```
#delimit;

/*This do file produces new race variable which reclassifies all indians into the coloured
category (there are only 4 in the adult sample) and looks to add the 11 out of 15 respondents
who called themselves other also into coloured because inspection has shown that these
respondents have called themselves Cape Malay*/;

gen PopGrp = a2;
label var PopGrp "Consolidated race groups Indian & Other into coloured";

replace PopGrp = 2 if a2 == 3;
replace PopGrp = 2 if a2specify == "CAPE MALAY";
replace PopGrp = 2 if a2specify == "MALAY";
replace PopGrp = 2 if a2specify == "MUSLIM";
replace PopGrp = 2 if a2specify == "cape malay";

label define PopGrplabel 1 "Black/African";
label define PopGrplabel 2 "Coloured", add;
label define PopGrplabel 996 "Other", add;

label values PopGrp PopGrplabel;

/*This table shows the reason for other, in question a2, of those people who said they were
  other (996) 11 specified what they were while 4 did not hence the need for an other category
  to capture these 4.

tab  a2specify if a2==996,m

     a.2. old |
    apartheid |
       racial |
classificatio |
      n-other |
      specify |      Freq.     Percent        Cum.
--------------+-----------------------------------
              |          4       26.67       26.67
   CAPE MALAY |          5       33.33       60.00
        MALAY |          1        6.67       66.67
       MUSLIM |          2       13.33       80.00
   cape malay |          3       20.00      100.00
--------------+-----------------------------------
        Total |         15      100.00 */;
```

Appendix 1.21 - ResHiEd

APPENDIX 1.21

```
#delimit;

/*Do file creating new variable which captures the highest education level of respondents*/;

gen ResHiEd = .;
label var ResHiEd "Respondent's highest education level";

replace ResHiEd = 1  if qualify2 == 1 & (a7 == 0 | a7 ==.) & a3 == 2 /*Respondents with no education*/;;
replace ResHiEd = 2  if qualify2 == 1 & a22 == 2 & (a7 >= 1 & a7 <= 7) | qualify2 == 1 & (a26 == 0 | a26 == 1) & (a7
>= 1 & a7 <= 7) /*Primary School education*/;
replace ResHiEd = 3  if qualify2 == 1 & a22 == 2 & (a7 > 7 & a7 <= 9) /*Std 6 - std 7*/;
replace ResHiEd = 4  if qualify2 == 1 & a22 == 2 & (a7 > 9 & a7 <= 11) /*Std 8 - std 9*/;
replace ResHiEd = 7  if qualify2 == 1 & a22 == 2 & a7 == 12 /*Matric*/;
replace ResHiEd = 10 if qualify2 == 1 & a26 == 2 & ResHiEd == .; /*university degree*/;
replace ResHiEd = 9  if qualify2 == 1 & (a26 == 5 | a26 == 6 | a26 == 7) & a7 == 12 /*Post matric diploma*/;
replace ResHiEd = 8  if qualify2 == 1 & (a26 == 8 | a26 == 9) & a7 == 12 /*Post matric certificate*/;
replace ResHiEd = 5  if qualify2 == 1 & (a26 == 8 | a26 == 9) & a7 < 12 /*Pre-matric certificate*/;
replace ResHiEd = 6  if qualify2 == 1 & a26 == 7 & a7 < 12 /*Pre-matric diploma*/;

replace ResHiEd = 2  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a7 >= 1 & a7 <= 7) & a26 == . ;
replace ResHiEd = 3  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a7 > 7 & a7 <= 9) & a26 == .;
replace ResHiEd = 4  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a7 > 9 & a7 <= 11) & a26 == .;
replace ResHiEd = 7  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & a7 ==12 & a26 == .;

replace ResHiEd = 3  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a7 > 7 & a7 <= 9) & (a26 == 0 | a26 == 1);
replace ResHiEd = 4  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a7 > 9 & a7 <= 11) & (a26 == 0 | a26 == 1);
replace ResHiEd = 7  if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & a7 ==12 & (a26 == 0 | a26 == 1);

replace ResHiEd = 11 if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & a26 == 3 /*Trade Certificate*/;
replace ResHiEd = 12 if qualify2 == 1 & ResHiEd == . & (a26 == 4 | a26 == 996) /*Other*/;

label define ResHiEdlabela 1 "none";
label define ResHiEdlabela 2 "Primary", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 3 "grade 8-9", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 4 "grade 10-11", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 5 "PreMatr Cert", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 6 "PreMatr Dipl", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 7 "Matric", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 8 "PostMatr Cert", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 9 "PostMatr Dipl", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 10 "Degree", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 11 "Trade Cert", add;
label define ResHiEdlabela 12 "Other", add;
```

```
label values ResHiEd ResHiEdlabela;
```

Appendix 1.22 - urban_rural

APPENDIX 1.22

```
#delimit;

/*Do file recoding question b2 so that only two categories, rural and urban*/;

gen ruralurban1 = b2;

replace ruralurban1 = 2 if b2 == 3;

label var ruralurban1 "Rural or urban place where res born";

label define ruralurban1label 1 "Urban";
label define ruralurban1label 2 "Rural", add;

label values ruralurban ruralurban1label;

gen urban_rural = .;

label var urban_rural "Urban/Rural place where res grew up";

replace urban_rural = 1 if c2area >=1 & c2area <= 3 /*Urban*/;
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2area >=4 & c2area <= 6 /*Rural*/;

replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "RURAL IN SA";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "RURAL, IN SA, OUTSIDE BANTUSTAN";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "Rural area in SA outsid bantustan";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "Rural area under municipalities";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "TOWNSHIP";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "TOWNSHIP INSIDE SA";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "URBAN";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "URBAN CT";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "Urban area";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "Urban area - residential";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "rural";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "rural area in SA outtside Banttusttan";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "rural area in SA. outside bantustan";
replace urban_rural = 2 if c2other == "rural area inside s.a. but outside bantustans";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "township in CT";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "township inside SA (CT))";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "township inside bantustan";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "township outside bantustats";
replace urban_rural = 1 if c2other == "urban squatter camp";

label define urban_rurallabel 1 "Urban";
```

```
label define urban_rurallabel 2 "Rural", add;
label values urban_rural urban_rurallabel;
```